



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

TX 428.42 .P772 M

Pollard, R. S.

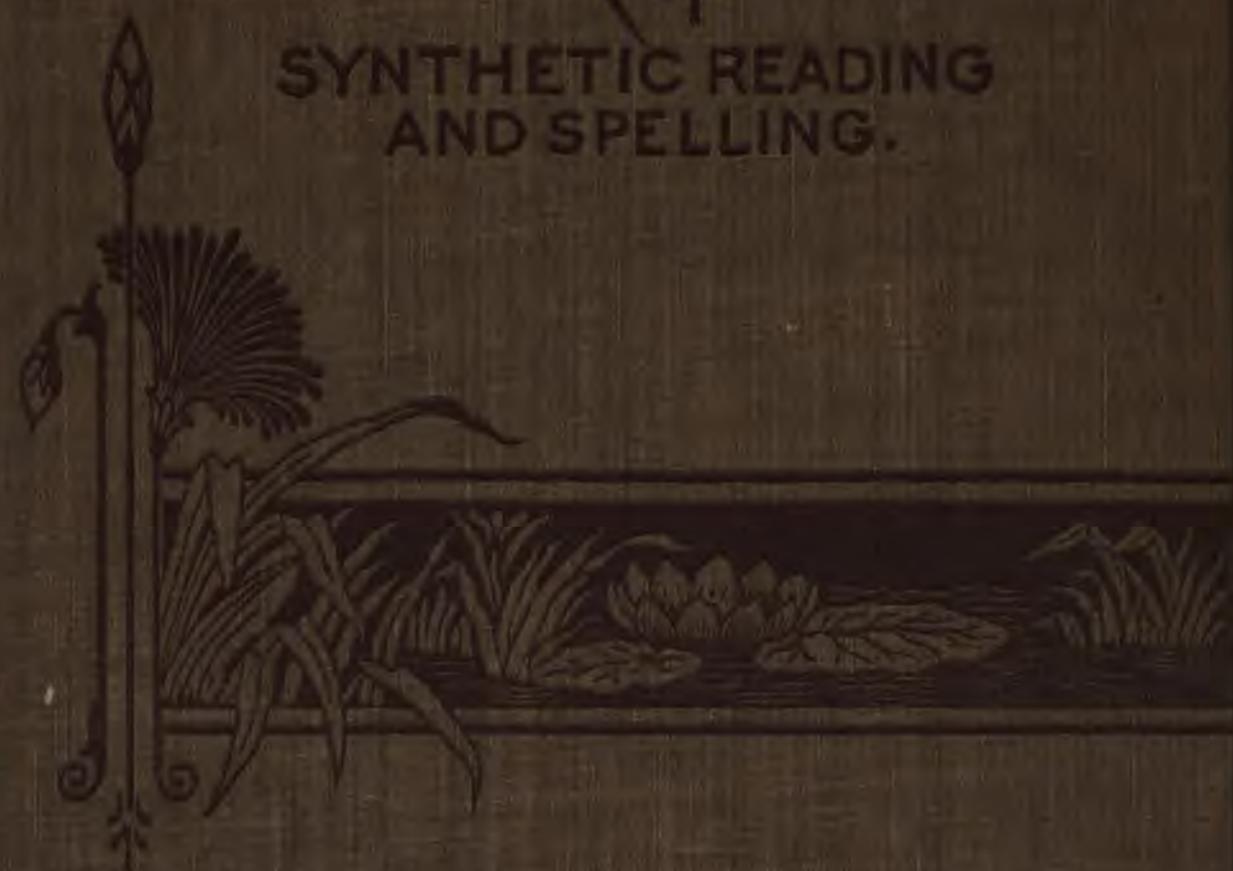
Complete manual : Pollard's synthetic m

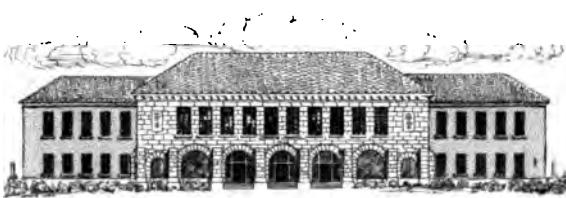
Stanford University Libraries



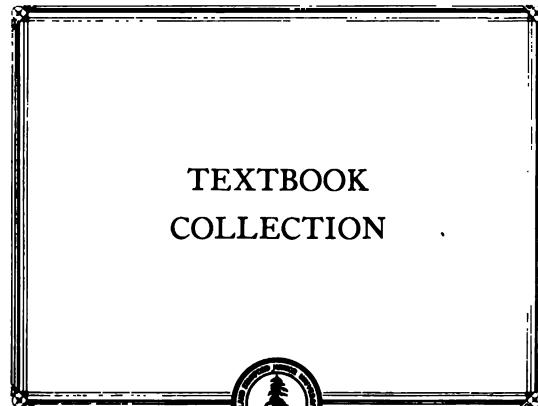
3 6105 04920 7611

Pollard's  
Manual  
of  
SYNTHETIC READING  
AND SPELLING.





SCHOOL OF EDUCATION  
LIBRARY



STANFORD UNIVERSITY  
LIBRARIES





A COMPLETE MANUAL.

---

POLLARD'S  
SYNTHETIC METHOD

OF

READING AND SPELLING.

---

DESIGNED TO ACCOMPANY SYNTHETIC READERS AND SPELLERS.

---

BY REBECCA S. POLLARD.

---

NEW-YORK ♦ CINCINNATI ♦ CHICAGO  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

588318  
C

COPYRIGHT, 1889, BY  
WESTERN PUBLISHING HOUSE

## PREFACE.

---

THE habit of correct speaking should be formed in the nursery.

It is there that the prattler should be taught distinct articulation, which is the first requisite for good reading.

How often do we hear fond mothers indulge in such expressions as "Dood baby! he tan say evesing."

It has been said that the motions of children are, originally, graceful, and it is by permitting them to become perverted that we lay the foundation for habitual awkwardness in later life. This is equally true of correct pronunciation. Let the same care be taken to secure good reading as is required to make an accomplished performer on the piano. Let pupils understand the full meaning of this quotation: "Words should be delivered from the lips as beautiful coin, newly issued from the mint; deeply and accurately impressed; perfectly finished; neatly struck by the proper organs; distinct; in due succession and of due weight."

Make reading of the *first importance*. As in music, let there be scales to practice; drills in articulation; a *thorough preparation*) for reading before the simplest sentence is attempted.

Let the rules governing the correct pronunciation of words be learned by singing the songs prepared expressly for this purpose and found in the back of this book. Make a pleasing recreation of the singing, and the youngest pupils will learn, unconsciously, what it would otherwise be impossible for them to remember.

Since accurate pronunciation and correct spelling are of the utmost importance, what can be more desirable than a method based upon the rules of orthoëpy and orthography?

Instead of teaching the word as a whole and afterward subjecting it to phonic analysis, is it not infinitely better to take the sounds of the letters for our starting point, and with these sounds lay a foundation firm and broad, upon which we can build whole

families of words for instant recognition? What wonder that little ones grow weary of the "black rat" so often presented for inspection, or that "the boy" becomes monotonous after repeated introductions!

Our method may be taught by the printed letters or by script. Our preference is for the former. Prepare the child for the printed page by the presentation of *printed words*.

This is an age of drawing and sketching. A child may be taught to draw an oval, in the formation of the letter g, as readily as he learns to sketch a cup. If reading and spelling are of more importance than the mere imitative art of writing (an art that even feeble-minded children can readily attain), why not defer this until later; until pupils are made familiar with printed words by printing them upon their slates? The reproduction of the letters, as they occur in the words of the Spellers for marking, is exactly what pupils need to familiarize them with the printed page. It is to the latter their first efforts are directed, and for this reason they should be taught to print.

The words of our Speller have been so classified as to obviate the necessity of a continuance of printing. As soon as pupils have been led into independent marking, these printed pages should be placed in their hands.

It has been proved, in innumerable instances, during the past four years, that first grade pupils are as delighted with the busy-work afforded by the marking and sounding of the letters as are children of more tender years with their kindergarten occupations. Is it not wise then, to encourage such employment as impresses upon the memory the elements of the word, and thus, unconsciously, leads the child into independence of thought and action? Let the marking, sounding and pronouncing of words in the Primary Speller follow each black-board drill. Let no attempt be made to read until every word in the reading lesson has been marked and sounded; until every word meets with *instant* recognition.

There must be no *guess work*; no reference to pictures; no waiting for a story from the teacher to *develop the thought*. If the

instructions of the Manual are carefully followed (in inflection, as well as in pronunciation), the child's *own voice* will give him a perfect understanding of what he reads. Do you doubt the possibility of this? Then visit the schools where the Synthetic Method has been tested and note the enthusiasm of the pupils; their appreciation of what they read.

Do not permit pupils to use books *in which diacritical marks are printed*. It is the correct *placing* of these marks that leads to *independence in pronunciation*. If you would give the Synthetic a fair trial, place in the hands of your pupils the books in which we have arranged and classified words for marking. If attempts be made to instruct through *other* books, the multiplicity of sounds found in every lesson will only confuse pupils and discourage teachers.

#### CAUSES OF FAILURE.

Upon making inquiries of a teacher who told me she had failed utterly in her attempt to teach the Synthetic and had gone back to her old method of instruction, the following replies were elicited:

“Did you require your pupils to print?”

“By no means. Printing would not be tolerated here.”

“Did you teach them the new sounds of the letters, by the singing of the scales and of the songs?”

“Well, no; I do not sing myself and the songs sound rather foolish.”

“Did you lead them, step by step, until they were able to mark, without your assistance, the classified words in our Spellers and Readers?”

“We did not deem a change of books necessary, and I could never be induced to permit pupils to *ruin their books by marking*.”

“Not if, by so doing, accuracy in pronunciation be attained?”

“Can not the same results be attained by writing and marking words?” she asked.

They may, but not in the same length of time. It is the printed form that the child should first be led to recognize, because

it is from the printed page we expect him to read and study. Accuracy in marking and correctness in sounding are of the first importance.

It requires, besides, too much work upon the part of the child to copy all the words of a lesson. He finds them in his Speller classified—arranged for marking—and forthwith begins the pleasing task of *preparing to pronounce them*. In his Reader he finds similar words which grow familiar through a *second* marking, and it is not until this is accomplished that the *reading* should be attempted.

As to the spoiling of the books, parents learn to consider this a trifling loss when they are brought to realize that the result of this "marking" is *accurate reading and correct spelling*. How can the *price of a book* be weighed in comparison with such results? Upon further inquiry, this teacher informed me that she had used what she called a *Combined Method*. She had presented the word as *a whole*, and afterward desired pupils to write and mark it according to Synthetic rules.

The Word and the Synthetic Method can not be *combined*. Teach pupils to recognize a word "as a whole" and there will be no incentive to "find it out" by marking and sounding. Prolonged effort, upon the teacher's part, to lead pupils to recognize individual words is what Word Method demands. With Synthetic it is touch, voice, ear, eye and memory. It involves independence of action. Pupils need no help with words whose classification has been explained. They understand their work, and undertake it with the proud consciousness of their own ability. Without a thought of what the word may be, they "mark and sound," as the pencil glides from right to left; then, lifting it, all the sounds are quickly blended, and lo! from their own lips a familiar word falls upon the ear.

In proof of the impossibility of classifying our language for the purpose of presenting words of similar sound, the words *dough*, *though* and *through* are often presented. No trouble arises from such exceptions where these words are presented for marking. We show that the first two are classified with the "o long family,"

and the last with the family of "double o long." By repeatedly marking such words, the letters composing them become fixed in the mind, and thus their *orthography* as well as their pronunciation is secured.

The design of the Manual is to guide the inexperienced teacher in her daily work. The simplest language has been chosen; such expressions as she would use in explaining to first grade pupils. For this reason all technicalities have been avoided, the terms used being only such as the youngest pupil may comprehend. The "Johnny Story" should be read carefully before beginning the instruction, because, through it, the sounds of the letters are presented and many expressions used in the Manual explained.

The devices serve to hold the attention of the youngest pupils, while the pleasing recreation of singing the songs adapted to the lessons, rob "diacritical marking" of all its terrors.

Carping critics, who imagine they can absorb the method by glancing through the Manual have asserted that the method consists merely in the devices we use at the beginning of the work, and that it is through these, alone, that an unusual interest is awakened.

Why should not something be used to awaken and hold the interest of children in the drudgery of the first lessons in reading? Are not splints, balls, toothpicks, clay and sand-work used for this purpose in teaching the first principles of arithmetic and geography? Every intelligent teacher knows when the developing mind of the child no longer needs these devices or helps in the last named branches. Why should there be any question as to when the devices of this method have served their purpose?

Experienced teachers affirm that the interest on the part of pupils becomes even more intense when these devices are dropped and they learn to recognize the different families of words, and to observe their methodical classifications. If the teacher is enthusiastic, there will be no abatement of interest upon the part of the pupils.

Our method is no longer suggested as an experiment. From

*PREFACE.*

every state in the Union come letters from earnest teachers, who have tested its worth, and are generous enough to send us their cordial endorsements; who, unsolicited, assure us they have found, at last, the one thing needful in primary teaching—a method that leads to independence in pronunciation.

REBECCA S. POLLARD.

---

**SPELLING REFORM.**

The American Philological Association has recommended the following "Rules for New Spellings":

1. Drop *ue* at the end of words like *dialogue*, *catalogue*, etc., where the preceding vowel is short. Thus spell *demagog*, *epilog*, *synagog*, etc.
2. Drop final *e* in such words as *definite*, *infinite*, *favorite*, etc., where the preceding vowel is short. Thus spell *opposit*, *preterit*, *hypocrit*, *requisit*, etc.
3. Drop final *te* in words like *quartette*, *coquette*, *cigarette*, etc. Thus spell *cigaret*, *roset*, *epaulet*, *vedet*, *gazet*, etc.
4. Drop final *me* in words like *programme*. Thus spell *program*, *oriflam*, *gram*, etc.
5. Change *ph* to *f* in words like *phantom*, *telegraph*, *phase*, etc. Thus spell *alfabet*, *paragraf*, *filosofy*, *fonetic*, *fotograf*, etc.
6. Substitute *e* for the diphthongs *æ* and *ə* when they have the sound of that letter. Thus spell *eoltan*, *esthetic*, *diarrhea*, *subpena*, *esofagus*, *atheneum*, etc.

The National Educational Association has recommended for use in its official documents the following:

tho for though	program for programme	prolog for prologue
thru " through	thruout " throughout	demagog " demagogue
altho " although	thorofare " thoroughfare	decalog " decalogue
thoro " thorough	catalog " catalogue	pedagog " pedagogue

The International Dictionary has been taken as the standard for pronunciation and spelling in this series of books, though the above recommendations are cordially approved.

The great difficulty in the way of reform in spelling is that most people have been taught to recognize words by their forms only, not by what their letters say. Thus, it would be difficult for them to read such words as *thru*, *gazet*, *fotograf*, *filosofy*, etc. Children taught by the Pollard Method are prepared to read any spelling governed by phonic law. The letters in a word speak, and the child will get the pronunciation, and hence the meaning, as readily from the spelling *thru*, with which he is not familiar, as from the spelling *through*, which he knows; whereas, to a child taught to recognize words from form alone, an unfamiliar symbol, as *thru*, is not a "sign of an idea."

THE PUBLISHERS.

# CONTENTS.

	PAGE
DIACRITICAL MARKS (as used in the International Dictionary).....	16
VOWEL MARKS.....	16
CONSONANT MARKS .....	16
SPECIAL MARKS USED IN THIS BOOK.....	16
CLASSIFICATIONS OF THE ALPHABET.....	17
TABLE OF SOUNDS.....	18
VOWELS AND VOWEL EQUIVALENTS.....	18
CONSONANTS AND CONSONANT EQUIVALENTS.....	20
CONDENSED TABLE OF VOWEL EQUIVALENTS .....	21
CONDENSED TABLE OF CONSONANT EQUIVALENTS... ..	21
TERMS.....	22
SUGGESTIVE NAMES .....	23
"MAKE SCALES," "MARK AND SOUND," "TIE," "DOOR-KNOBS," "BACK-DOOR KEYS," "FRONT-DOOR KEYS," "ROTARY," "FAMILY NAMES," "STENCILS," "RUNAWAYS."	
ORDER OF PRESENTATION.....	24
MARKING AND SOUNDING (WITH TABLE).....	24
MANUAL.....	26
MOTION SIGNS .....	26
VOICE SIGNS.....	26
BREATHING..	27
STENCIL PICTURES .....	28
WHAT LETTERS SAY .....	29
LADDERS.....	30
WINDOW AND LETTER SONGS.....	31
MAKE SCALES.....	32
FAMILIES OF WORDS.....	33
WORD-BUILDING .....	36
NAME-WORDS.....	38
SINGULAR AND PLURAL NUMBER.....	38
THE LETTER S.....	39
BACK-DOOR KEYS.....	40
THE LETTER S CONTINUED ..	41
THE "ACK" FAMILY.....	42
THE "AND" FAMILY.....	44
THE "ANG" FAMILY.....	45
THE "ANK" FAMILY.....	45
FRONT-DOOR KEYS.....	47

*CONTENTS.*

	PAGE
<b>C AND G KEYS .....</b>	<b>48</b>
<b>WHISPER KEYS.....</b>	<b>48</b>
<b>TH (BREATH).....</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>TH (VOICE).....</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>THREE LETTER KEYS.....</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>OBSCURE A .....</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>ADJECTIVES.....</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>E OBSCURE EQUAL T + A OBSCURE.....</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>A TALK ABOUT E SHORT.....</b>	<b>52</b>
<b>A EQUAL TO E SHORT .....</b>	<b>54</b>
<b>A TALK ABOUT I SHORT .....</b>	<b>55</b>
<b>E EQUAL TO I SHORT .....</b>	<b>56</b>
<b>A TALK ABOUT O SHORT.....</b>	<b>56</b>
<b>A EQUAL TO O SHORT.....</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>A TALK ABOUT U SHORT .....</b>	<b>58</b>
<b>O EQUAL TO U SHORT.....</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>O EQUAL TO WU.....</b>	<b>60</b>
Action Words .....	60
OO Short and Equivalents.....	60 to 62
<b>PROPER DIPHTHONGS.....</b>	<b>63</b>
Diphthong Children.....	64
Table of Reference (for Proper Diphthongs).....	65
<b>THE SHORT FAMILY.....</b>	<b>66</b>
<b>THE LONG FAMILY.....</b>	<b>67</b>
C and G Soft.....	69
<b>A LONG AND E LONG .....</b>	<b>70</b>
Table of Reference (for Long Families).....	70
<b>I LONG AND I (PRONOUN) .....</b>	<b>71</b>
<b>O LONG .....</b>	<b>71</b>
Öll and öll .....	72
<b>U LONG.....</b>	<b>73</b>
Table of Reference (for Word-Building).....	73
<b>EW EQUAL TO U LONG .....</b>	<b>74</b>
<b>OO LONG.....</b>	<b>74</b>
Table of Reference (for Word-Building).....	75
Equivalents of OO Long.....	76
<b>K, G, W AND U SILENT .....</b>	<b>78</b>
<b>THE D AND ED WORDS.....</b>	<b>79</b>
<b>EQUIVALENTS OF LONG VOWELS .....</b>	<b>80</b>
Equivalents of A Long.....	86

## CONTENTS.

II

	PAGE
Equivalents of E Long.....	83
Table of Reference (for Word-Building).....	83
Equivalents of I Long .....	84
Equivalents of O Long.....	84
Table of Reference (for Word-Building).....	85
Equivalents of U Long.....	85
<b>THE ITALIAN FAMILY.....</b>	<b>86</b>
A Italian.....	86
Table of Reference (for Word-Building) .....	87
<i>Is</i> and <i>Are</i> .....	88
Wave Vowels.....	89
<b>THE CIRCUMFLEX VOWELS.....</b>	<b>90</b>
O Circumflex.....	90
U Circumflex and O equal to U circumflex.....	92
<b>THE BROAD FAMILY AND O CIRCUMFLEX EQUAL TO A BROAD.....</b>	<b>93</b>
E Circumflex.....	94
Sign-Board Words .....	95
<b>THE PRONOUNS "THEY" AND "THEIR" .....</b>	<b>95</b>
A Circumflex.....	95
A Short Italian.....	96
Table of Reference (for Word-Building).....	98
<b>SHORT VOWELS.....</b>	<b>99</b>
Vowel Markings (Table, with Explanation) .....	100
<b>COMPOUND WORDS .....</b>	<b>103</b>
<b>WORDS WITH EQUIVALENT SOUNDS .....</b>	<b>104</b>
<b>DISSYLLABLES.....</b>	<b>104</b>
The <i>ing</i> Family .....	105
Accent .....	106
Name and Action Words.....	107
The <i>le</i> Families .....	109
The <i>y</i> Short Families.....	111
<i>Ry</i> and <i>row</i> .....	111
The <i>er</i> Family .....	111
The Quiet Family.....	112
A Short Obscure and A Short Italian.....	113
The Letter <i>s</i> .....	114
<b>SUGGESTIONS FOR REVIEW.....</b>	<b>114</b>
<b>RULES.....</b>	<b>119</b>
<b>THE MARKING OF VOWELS.....</b>	<b>119</b>
<b>THE MARKING OF CONSONANTS.....</b>	<b>127</b>

*CONTENTS.*

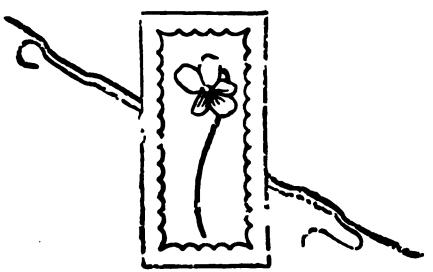
	PAGE.
THE JOHNNY STORY .....	137
APPENDIX .....	189
SUGGESTIONS FOR FIRST GRADES.....	189
Drills in Articulation.....	189
SUGGESTIONS FOR HIGHER GRADES.....	190
Breathing Exercises .....	191
Articulation Exercises.....	192
VOCAL DRILL.....	194
Exercises for Front Placing.....	194
Exercises for Center Placing.....	195
EMPHASIS.....	196
Rising and Falling Inflection.....	198
PROSODY.....	200
Rhyme and Blank Verse.....	201
SUPPLEMENT .....	203
SONGS .....	221-245

*EQUIVALENTS.*

	PAGE
<u>æ</u> = <u>a</u> .....	51
<u>e</u> = <u>ɛ</u> .....	54
<u>ə</u> = <u>i</u> .....	56
<u>ɔ</u> = <u>ɔ</u> .....	57
<u>ɒ</u> = <u>ʊ</u> .....	59
<u>e</u> = <u>w</u> .....	60
<u>ø</u> = <u>u</u> = <u>o</u> .....	61
<u>ɛw</u> = <u>ü</u> .....	74
<u>ʊ</u> = <u>u</u> = <u>o</u> .....	76
<u>ā</u> = <u>ā</u> = <u>e</u> .....	80
<u>ē</u> = <u>ē</u> = <u>i</u> .....	83
<u>ȳ</u> = <u>ȳ</u> = <u>igh</u> = <u>i</u> .....	84
<u>ō</u> = <u>ō</u> = <u>ō</u> = <u>ō</u> = <u>ō</u> .....	84
<u>ū</u> = <u>ū</u> = <u>ēw</u> = <u>ū</u> .....	85
<u>ȳr</u> = <u>īr</u> = <u>ēr</u> .....	89
<u>or</u> = <u>ūr</u> .....	92
<u>ō</u> = <u>a</u> .....	93
<u>gh</u> = <u>f</u> .....	87 and 102
<u>gh</u> = <u>sh</u> <u>tch</u> = <u>ch</u> <u>eh</u> = <u>k</u> .....	103

**SPECIAL INDEX.****LANGUAGE LESSONS.**

	PAGE
NAME WORDS.....	38
PLURAL NUMBER.....	38
ADJECTIVES.....	50
PRONOUNS.....	71
"D" AND "ED" WORDS.....	79
ACTION WORDS.....	60 and 79
SIGN-BOARD WORDS.....	95
THE PRONOUNS "THEY" AND "THEIR".....	95
LANGUAGE LESSON ON "IS" AND "ARE".....	88
NAME AND ACTION WORDS WITH "ING".....	107



THE MANUAL  
**(EXPLANATORY)**

## CHARACTERISTIC NAMES

### AS USED IN THE INTERNAL TAX RETURN

#### GENERAL NAMES

THE PLATEAU over which we travel.	is	the PLATEAU under a roof.	is	the	is
THE MOUNTAIN over which we travel.	is	THE MOUNTAIN under a roof.	is	the	is
THE HILL over which we travel.	is	THE HILL under a roof.	is	the	is
THE HILLS & VALLEYS over which we travel.	is	A LINE under	is	the	is
A DITCH over which we travel.	is	THE LINE OR SPLITTER over any ground.	is	the	is

#### GENERAL NAMES

A LINE over which we travel.	is	THE TERRACE	is	the	is
A DITCH over which we travel.	is	THE SPLITTER LINE under a roof.	is	the	is
A HILL over which we travel.	is	A LINE across it.	is	the	is
A HILL & VALLEY over which we travel.	is	THE LINE OR VALLEY over it.	is	the	is

#### SPECIAL NAMES USED IN THIS STATE

A HILL over which we travel.	is	A LINE across it.	is	the	is
A DITCH over which we travel.	is	A LINE across it.	is	the	is
A HILL over which we travel.	is	THE LINE OR VALLEY under it.	is	the	is
THE HILL over which we travel.	is	THE LINE OR VALLEY under it.	is	the	is
THE HILL & VALLEY over which we travel.	is	THE LINE OR VALLEY under it.	is	the	is
A HILL over which we travel.	is	THE LINE OR SPLITTER under any ridge.	is	the	is
THE SPLITTER LINE over it.	is				

## CLASSIFICATIONS OF THE ALPHABET.

Vowels.....**a, e, i, o, u, and sometimes w and y.**

Consonants.....

SUBVOCALS (Voiced consonants)	{ b, d, g, j, l, m, n, r, v, w, y, z.
ASPIRATES or SURDS (Whispers)	{ c, f, h, k, p, q, s, t, x;
or	
LABIALS (Lip letters)	{ b, m, p, w.
LINGUALS (Tongue letters)	{ c, d, g, k, j, l, n, q, r, s, t, x, y, z.
DENTALS (Teeth letters)	{ f, v.
GUTTURAL (Throat)	{ g
PURE ASPIRATE (Breath)	{ h

Diphthongs .....

Vowel Digraphs.....

ae, ai, ao, au, aw, ay;
ea, ee, ei, eo, eu, ew, ey;
ia, ie, io; oa, oe, oo, ou, ow;
ua, ue, ui, uo, uy; ye.

Vowel Trigraphs.....

awe, aye, eau, eou, ewe, eye.
ieu, iou, iew, owe.

Consonant Digraphs.....**ch, gh, ph, sh, th, ng.**

Also, any two consonants which are combined to express a single articulated sound.

Consonant Trigraphs .....

**ght, tch.**

## DIACRITICAL MARKS

AS USED IN THE INTERNATIONAL DICTIONARY.

### VOWEL MARKS.

THE MACRON, over any vowel and over oo...as,	<u>ā</u>	A DOT, under a, o and u.....as,	<u>a</u>
THE BREVE, over any vowel and over oo...as,	<u>ă</u>	TWO DOTS, over a and t.....as,	<u>ă</u>
THE CIRCUMFLEX, over a, e, o and u....as,	<u>â</u>	TWO DOTS, under a, o and u.....as,	<u>â</u>
THE TILDE, OR WAVE, over e, i and y...as,	<u>ē</u>	A LINE, under e.....as,	<u>e</u>
▲ DOT, over a and o.....as,	<u>ä</u>	THE LONG OBSCURE, over any vowel....as,	<u>ä</u>

### CONSONANT MARKS.

▲ LINE, over g.....as,	<u>ḡ</u>	THE CEDILLA.....as,	<u>ç</u>
▲ DOT, over g.....as,	<u>ḡ</u>	THE SUSPENDED BAR, under s and z...as,	<u>ſ</u>
▲ LINE, under n.....as,	<u>n̄</u>	A LINE, through th.....as,	<u>th</u>
▲ LINE, through c.....as,	<u>c̄</u>	THE TILDE, OR WAVE, over n.....as,	<u>ñ</u>

### SPECIAL MARKS USED IN THIS BOOK.

▲ SLANT LINE, through any letter to make it silent.	<u>ā</u>	A LINE, through a, o, u, d, f, gh and ph...as,	<u>ā</u>
▲ DOT, over e and u.....as,	<u>ē</u>	A LINE, under u.....as,	<u>u</u>
▲ DOT, under c, s and t.....as,	<u>c̄</u>	THE CIRCUMFLEX, under o.....as,	<u>ô</u>
TWO DOTS, under ew, s and z.....as,	<u>ew</u>	THE INVERTED BREVE, over i.....as,	<u>i</u>
THREE DOTS, under t.....as,	<u>t̄</u>	THE SHORT OBSCURE, under a and e...as,	<u>ä</u>
▲ LINE, over ew, x and eau.....as,	<u>ew</u>	THE GLIDE OBSCURE, under any glide vowel.....as,	<u>er</u>
THE SUSPENDED BAR, under e.....as,	<u>é</u>		

## CLASSIFICATIONS OF THE ALPHABET.

**Vowels**.....**a, e, i, o, u, and sometimes w and y.**

**Consonants**.....  

SUBVOCALS (Voiced consonants)	{ b, d, g, j, l, m, n, r, v, w, y, z.
ASPIRATES or SURDS (Whispers)	{ c, f, h, k, p, q, s, t, x;
or	
LABIALS (Lip letters)	{ b, m, p, w.
LINGUALS (Tongue letters)	{ c, d, g, k, j, l, n, q, r, s, t, x, y, z.
DENTALS (Teeth letters)	{ f, v.
GUTTURAL (Throat)	{ ȡ
PURE ASPIRATE (Breath)	{ h

**Diphthongs** .....**oi, ou, ow, oy.**

**Vowel Digraphs**.....  

ae, ai, ao, au, aw, ay;
ea, ee, ei, eo, eu, ew, ey;
ia, ie, io; oa, oe, oo, ou, ow;
ua, ue, ui, uo, uy; ye.

**Vowel Trigraphs**.....  

awe, aye, eau, eou, ewe, eye.
ieu, iou, iew, owe.

**Consonant Digraphs**.....**ch, gh, ph, sh, th, ng.**  
Also, any two consonants which are combined to express a single articulated sound.

**Consonant Trigraphs** .....**ght, tch.**

**TABLE OF SOUNDS.**  
 (Arranged Alphabetically.)  
**VOWELS AND VOWEL EQUIVALENTS.**

a			
ă (short)	as in <i>hat</i>	ă̄ = ā̄	as in <i>portrait</i>
ā (long)	as in <i>hate</i>	ă̄ = ē̄	as in <i>said</i>
ä (Italian)	as in <i>car</i>	ă̄ = ā̄	as in <i>pair</i>
à (short Italian)	as in <i>ash</i>	ă̄̄ = ǟ̄	as in <i>aunt</i>
ă̄ (broad)	as in <i>all</i>	ă̄̄ = ā̄̄	as in <i>gauge</i>
â (circumflex)	as in <i>care</i>	ă̄̄ = ā̄̄	as in <i>haul</i>
ă̄ (short obscure)	as in <i>final</i>	ă̄̄ = ā̄̄	as in <i>saw</i>
ă̄̄ (long obscure)	as in <i>surface</i>	ă̄̄̄ = ā̄̄̄	as in <i>awe</i>
ar (glide obscure) = ē̄r	as in <i>collar</i>	ă̄̄̄ = ā̄̄̄	as in <i>day</i>
ă̄̄ = ē̄	as in <i>was</i>	ă̄̄̄ = ā̄̄̄	as in <i>Monday</i>
ă̄̄ = ē̄	as in <i>any</i>	ă̄̄̄ = ē̄̄̄	in the word <i>says</i>
ă̄̄ { must be marked and sounded as though it were ē alone.		ă̄̄̄ = ā̄̄̄	in <i>ay</i> , meaning <i>yes</i>
ă̄̄ = ī̄	as in <i>certain</i>	ă̄̄̄ = ā̄̄̄	in <i>aye</i> , meaning <i>yes</i>
ă̄̄ = ā̄̄	as in <i>laid</i>	ă̄̄̄ = ā̄̄̄	in <i>aye</i> , meaning <i>always</i>
e			
ĕ (short)	as in <i>net</i>	ĕ̄ = ī̄	as in <i>been</i>
ē (long)	as in <i>me</i>	ĕ̄ = ē̄	as in <i>heifer</i>
ê (circumflex) = ā̄̄	as in <i>there</i>	ĕ̄ = ē̄	as in <i>weird</i>
ĕ̄ (tilde or wave)	as in <i>her</i>	ĕ̄ = ī̄	as in <i>forfeit</i>
ĕ̄ (short obscure)	as in <i>patent</i>	ĕ̄ = ā̄̄	as in <i>heir</i>
ĕ̄ (long obscure)	as in <i>delay</i>	ĕ̄ = ā̄̄	as in <i>vein</i>
ĕ̄r (glide obscure)	as in <i>after</i>	ĕ̄̄ = ū̄	as in <i>pigeon</i>
ĕ̄̄ = ī̄	as in <i>pretty</i>	ĕ̄̄ = ē̄̄	as in <i>leopard</i>
ĕ̄̄ = ē̄̄	as in <i>head</i>	ĕ̄̄ = ē̄̄	as in <i>people</i>
ĕ̄̄ = ē̄̄	as in <i>near</i>	ĕ̄̄̄ = ū̄̄	as in <i>gorgeous</i>
ĕ̄̄ = ā̄̄	as in <i>break</i>	ĕ̄̄̄ = ū̄̄	as in <i>feud</i>
ĕ̄̄ = ā̄̄	as in <i>pear</i>	ĕ̄̄̄ = ō̄̄	as in the word <i>sew</i>
ĕ̄̄ = ē̄̄	as in <i>earn</i>	ĕ̄̄̄ = ō̄̄̄	as in <i>crew</i>
ĕ̄̄ = ā̄̄	as in <i>ocean</i>	ĕ̄̄̄ = ū̄̄	as in <i>pew</i>
ĕ̄̄ = ā̄̄	as in <i>heart</i>	ĕ̄̄̄ = ū̄̄	as in <i>ewe</i>
ĕ̄̄̄ = ū̄̄	as in <i>beau</i>	ĕ̄̄̄ = ē̄̄̄	as in <i>key</i>
ĕ̄̄̄ = ū̄̄	as in <i>beauty</i>	ĕ̄̄̄ = ā̄̄̄	as in <i>they</i>
ĕ̄̄̄ = ē̄̄̄	as in <i>keep</i>	ĕ̄̄̄ = ī̄̄̄	as in <i>donkey</i>
ĕ̄̄̄ = ē̄̄̄	as in <i>coffee</i>	ĕ̄̄̄̄ = ī̄̄̄̄	as in <i>eye</i>

	i	
i (short)	as in <i>hit</i>	ię = ī as in <i>duties</i>
ī (long)	as in <i>kite</i>	īę = ī as in <i>tried</i>
ī (tilde or wave) = ē	as in <i>sir</i>	īę = ē as in <i>thief</i>
ī (long obscure)	as in <i>idea</i>	īer = ēr as in <i>brazier</i>
īr (glide obscure) = ēr	as in <i>nadir</i>	īēū = ū as in <i>lieu</i>
i = y (consonant)	as in <i>cavilant</i>	īew = ū as in <i>view</i>
ī = ē	as in <i>pique</i>	īō = ū as in <i>nation</i>
īa = ā	as in <i>social</i>	īōū = ū as in <i>gracious</i>
īe = ē	as in <i>ancient</i>	

	o	
ō (short)	as in <i>hop</i>	ōa = ā as in <i>broad</i>
ō (long)	as in <i>bone</i>	ōe { must be marked and sounded as though it were e alone.
ō (circumflex) = ā	as in <i>for</i>	ōę = ōō as in <i>shoe</i>
ō (long obscure)	as in <i>hero</i>	ōę = ū as in <i>does</i>
ōr (glide obscure) = ēr	as in <i>labor</i>	ōę = ū as in <i>toe</i>
ōi (diphthong)	as in <i>oil</i>	ōi = ī as in <i>tortoise</i>
ōu (diphthong)	as in <i>out</i>	ōu = ū as in <i>blood</i>
ōw (diphthong) = ōu	as in <i>cow</i>	ōę = ū as in <i>door</i>
ōy (diphthong) = ōi	as in <i>coy</i>	ōu = ū as in <i>route</i>
ōō (short)	as in <i>book</i>	ōu = ū as in <i>could</i>
ōō (long)	as in <i>moon</i>	ōu = ū as in <i>touch</i>
ō = ū	as in <i>word</i>	ōu = ū as in <i>four</i>
ō = wū	as in <i>one</i>	ōu = ā as in <i>cough</i>
ō = ī	in the word <i>women</i>	ōu = ū as in <i>scourge</i>
ō = ū	as in <i>who</i>	ōw = ū as in <i>bellows</i>
ō = ū	as in <i>wolf</i>	ōw = ū as in <i>blow</i>
ō = ū	as in <i>son</i>	ōw = ū as in <i>window</i>
ōa = ū	as in <i>boat</i>	ōwę = ū as in <i>owe</i>

	u	
ū (short)	as in <i>cut</i>	ū = w (consonant) as in <i>queen</i>
ū (long)	as in <i>fuse</i>	ū = ū as in <i>rude</i>
ū (circumflex)	as in <i>turn</i>	ū = ū as in <i>put</i>
ū (long obscure)	as in <i>unite</i>	ū = ē as in <i>bury</i>
ūr (glide obscure) = ēr	as in * <i>augur</i>	ū = ī as in <i>busy</i>

\* The International Dictionary marks u short in the unaccented syllables of *augur*, etc., but we prefer to use our glide obscure mark, which represents the same sound.

u			
uă = ā	as in <i>guarantee</i>	uă (silent)	as in <i>plague, pique</i>
uă = ä	as in <i>guard</i>	uă = oo	as in <i>fruit</i>
uay = ē	in the word <i>quay</i>	uă = ū	as in <i>juice</i>
uă = oo	as in <i>true</i>	uă = ī	as in <i>guilt</i>
uă = ū	as in <i>due</i>	uor = er	as in <i>liquor</i>
uă = ē	as in <i>guess</i>	uă = ī	as in <i>buy</i>
* W (vowel only after a vowel) Y (vowel)			
ÿ (short) = ī	as in <i>hymn</i>	ÿ (tilde or wave) = ē	as in <i>myrrh</i>
ÿ (long) = ī	as in <i>by</i>	ÿ (long obscure) = ī	as in <i>hyena</i>
ÿr (glide obscure) = er	as in <i>satyr</i>	ÿă = ī	as in <i>dye</i>

## CONSONANTS AND CONSONANT EQUIVALENTS.

b	as in <i>bat, bell</i>	m	as in <i>map, came</i>
ç (hard) = k	as in <i>cat, cape</i>	n	as in <i>ran, not</i>
ç (cedilla) = s	as in <i>cell, mice</i>	ñ (nasal)	as in <i>rang, rank</i>
ç = z	as in <i>suffice, discern</i>	ñ = ny	as in <i>cañon, señor</i>
ç = sh	as in <i>precious, ocean</i>	p	as in <i>pin, ripe</i>
çh = sh	as in <i>chute, charade</i>	ph = f	as in <i>phrase, prophet</i>
çh = tsh	as in <i>chip, much</i>	q = k	as in <i>pique, opaque</i>
d	as in <i>dot, had</i>	r (rough)	as in <i>rat, run</i>
đ = t	as in <i>missed, raced</i>	r (glide)	as in <i>tar, her</i>
đ = j	in the word <i>soldier</i>	r (trill) in thr	as in <i>three, throw</i>
f	as in <i>fat, safe</i>	s (surd)	as in <i>sat, this</i>
f = v	in the word <i>of</i>	ç (sonant) = z	as in <i>has, rose</i>
g (hard)	as in <i>gave, dog</i>	ç = sh	as in <i>sure, mansion</i>
g (soft) = j	as in <i>gem, gentle</i>	ç = zh	as in <i>vision, closure</i>
g = zh	in the words <i>rouge, régime</i>	sh	as in <i>shut, dash</i>
gh = f	as in <i>cough, laugh</i>	t	as in <i>tub, hit</i>
gh = p	in the word <i>hiccough</i>	t = sh	as in <i>nation, partial</i>
h	as in <i>hat, hate</i>	t = ch	as in <i>question</i>
i = y (consonant)	as in <i>valiant</i> .	th (surd)	as in <i>thin, bath</i>
j	as in <i>jug, jet</i>	th (sonant)	as in <i>that, bathe</i>
j = y	in the word <i>hallelujah</i>	u = w	as in <i>queen, anguish</i>
k	as in <i>kind, cake</i>	v	as in <i>vex, live</i>
l	as in <i>lad, ail</i>		

<b>w</b>	as in <i>we, was</i>	<b>y (consonant)</b>	as in <i>yet, you</i>
<b>wh = hw</b>	as in <i>what, when</i>	<b>z</b>	as in <i>zeal, zest</i>
<b>x (surd) = ks</b>	as in <i>tax, vex</i>	<b>z = s</b>	in the word <i>chintz</i>
<b>x (sonant) = gz</b>	as in <i>exact, exist</i>	<b>z = zh</b>	as in <i>azure, braster</i>
<b>ꝝ = z</b>	as in <i>xebec, Xenia</i>		

## CONDENSED TABLE OF VOWEL EQUIVALENTS.

<b>ai</b>	<b>ai</b>	= <b>a</b>
<b>äu</b>	<b>äa</b>	= <b>ä</b>
<b>au</b>	<b>aw</b>	= <b>a</b>
<b>ai</b>	<b>öa</b>	= <b>å</b>
<b>ai</b>	<b>eh</b>	= <b>å</b>
<b>ea</b>	<b>iä</b>	= <b>æ</b>
<b>a = ai = ax = öa = öi = öö = u = ue</b>	<b>æ</b>	= <b>ø</b>
<b>öa = öö = öi = öö = öx = i = ii</b>	<b>ø</b>	= <b>ø</b>
<b>öa = i = y</b>	<b>ø</b>	= <b>ø</b>
<b>ar = ir = er = or = ur = uor = yr</b>	<b>er</b>	= <b>er</b>
<b>ai = e = ée = ei = éx = iø = qí = ü = ui = y</b>	<b>i</b>	= <b>i</b>
<b>ei = qyø = iø = ui = uý = y = ýø</b>	<b>i</b>	= <b>i</b>
<b>eau = ew = öa = öö = öø = öu = öw = öwø</b>	<b>o</b>	= <b>o</b>
<b>o = öu = u</b>	<b>oo</b>	= <b>oo</b>
<b>ew = o = öø = öu = u = ue = ui</b>	<b>oo</b>	= <b>oo</b>
<b>eo = eoø = io = iøu = ö = öø = öø = öu = öw = ü</b>	<b>oo</b>	= <b>oo</b>
<b>eaü = eü = ew = ewø = iøu = ieü = ue = üi = ü</b>	<b>oo</b>	= <b>oo</b>
<b>ö = öu</b>		

## CONDENSED TABLE OF CONSONANT EQUIVALENTS

<b>gh = ph = f</b>	<b>c = s = t = ch = sh</b>
<b>e = q = k</b>	<b>s = z = zh</b>
<b>ç = § = x = z</b>	

## ORDER OF PRESENTATION.

• § 1 No text-book, however carefully prepared, can take the place of the teacher, and if the best results are to be obtained, the different sounds, families, keys, etc., must be thoroughly taught by means of the oral instruction and the blackboard drill which the Manual suggests. Such instruction and drill should invariably precede the assignment of a lesson in the text-book. After the pupil has mastered the new subject, he should independently prepare the lesson in the book.

§ 2. The following is the order to be observed in presenting the lessons:

*First* :—Oral instruction ; excerpts from Johnny Story, using stencils and songs when teaching sounds ; talk about the new sound ; developing words by families ; reasons for marking, etc.

*Second* :—Blackboard drill, which should include the marking on the board by pupils, in turn, of all the letters, words and sentences given in the lesson.

*Third* :—Independent marking of the lesson by pupils at their seats.

*Fourth* :—Writing, from the teacher's dictation, the letters, family names, words and keys of the lesson.

*Fifth* :—Recitation; pupils pronouncing the words and reading the sentences of the lesson.

## MARKING AND SOUNDING.

§ 3. In marking and sounding, work from right to left. *Only* those consonants which are marked, should be sounded separately. Have pupils sound as they mark.

§ 4. A vowel should not be sounded separately, but, as the mark is placed, the sound of the vowel (unless followed by r) should be blended with the following consonant or consonants; that is, as the vowel is marked, the "family name" should be pronounced. In marking and sounding the word **hat**, do not sound t, á, h, h̄at; but át, h̄at. From the beginning, teach the child to blend the sound of the vowel with the following consonant or consonants, that he may learn to use the family name as a unit.

§ 5. When marking a glide vowel, the pupil should merely say, "Italian," "wave," "circumflex," "long," etc., as he places the mark, and then blend the sound of the vowel with the following consonant or consonants as he makes the tie, or the double tie.

§ 6. In marking a word containing a glide vowel, the regular order should be observed except that a back-door key should not be tied until after the glide vowel has been marked. Then, as the family name is pronounced, a double tie should be quickly made from the vowel to the r and from the r to the end of the back-door key.

§ 7. Though a tie is used as a diacritical mark to indicate certain sounds of th, ch and sh, these digraphs, when found after a glide vowel, should *not* be tied before the vowel is marked, because the double tie made after the glide vowel is marked, serves to indicate both the blending of the glide vowel with the digraph and the sound of the digraph. But when the sound of any such digraph is indicated by some diacritical mark other than a tie (as **th̄**) the tie should be used to indicate the *blending of the sounds only*.

# SUGGESTIVE NAMES.

## MAKE SCALES.

"Make scales" means to print the letters or the family names eight times upon the board, for the purpose of singing up and down as on the scale of d.

## MARK AND SOUND.

"Mark" means to diacritically mark. "Sound" means to give the sound of the letter as it is marked. (See page 24.)

## TIE.

"Tie" means to connect two or more letters by a curved line placed below them.

## DOOR KNOBS.

"Door knobs" are the single consonants found at the beginning or at the end of words or syllables.

## BACK-DOOR KEYS..

"Back-door keys" consist of any two or more consonants which follow the vowel element of a word and speak together. As, nd in and, nks in banks, etc.

## FRONT-DOOR KEYS.

"Front-door keys" consist of any two or more consonants which precede the vowel element of a word and speak together. As, er in crab, str in strap, etc.

## ROTARY.

"Rotary" means the Rotary Blackboard.

## FAMILY NAMES.

The "family names" of words are the names suggested by their terminations. As, the ab family, the elt family, the ost family, etc.

## STENCILS.

The "stencils" are sheets of paper so perforated as to enable the teacher, with a little chalk-dust, to put upon the blackboard the pictures used to illustrate the sounds.

## RUNAWAYS.

"Runaways" are words which look like one family, but talk like another. As, have, been, love, dove, etc. That is, been ran away from the family of Mr. E long and joined the family of Mr. I short.

## ORDER OF PRESENTATION.

§ 1 No text-book, however carefully prepared, can take the place of the teacher, and if the best results are to be obtained, the different sounds, families, keys, etc., must be thoroughly taught by means of the oral instruction and the blackboard drill which the Manual suggests. Such instruction and drill should invariably precede the assignment of a lesson in the text-book. After the pupil has mastered the new subject, he should independently prepare the lesson in the book.

§ 2. The following is the order to be observed in presenting the lessons:

*First* :—Oral instruction; excerpts from Johnny Story, using stencils and songs when teaching sounds; talk about the new sound; developing words by families; reasons for marking, etc.

*Second* :—Blackboard drill, which should include the marking on the board by pupils, in turn, of all the letters, words and sentences given in the lesson.

*Third* :—Independent marking of the lesson by pupils at their seats.

*Fourth* :—Writing, from the teacher's dictation, the letters, family names, words and keys of the lesson.

*Fifth* :—Recitation; pupils pronouncing the words and reading the sentences of the lesson.

## MARKING AND SOUNDING.

§ 3. In marking and sounding, work from right to left. *Only* those consonants which are marked, should be sounded separately. Have pupils sound as they mark.

§ 4. A vowel should not be sounded separately, but, as the mark is placed, the sound of the vowel (unless followed by r) should be blended with the following consonant or consonants; that is, as the vowel is marked, the "family name" should be pronounced. In marking and sounding the word **hat**, do not sound t, á, h, hăt; but át, hăt. From the beginning, teach the child to blend the sound of the vowel with the following consonant or consonants, that he may learn to use the family name as a unit.

§ 5. When marking a glide vowel, the pupil should merely say, "Italian," "wave," "circumflex," "long," etc., as he places the mark, and then blend the sound of the vowel with the following consonant or consonants as he makes the tie, or the double tie.

§ 6. In marking a word containing a glide vowel, the regular order should be observed except that a back-door key should not be tied until after the glide vowel has been marked. Then, as the family name is pronounced, a double tie should be quickly made from the vowel to the r and from the r to the end of the back-door key.

§ 7. Though a tie is used as a diacritical mark to indicate certain sounds of th, ch and sh, these digraphs, when found after a glide vowel, should *not* be tied before the vowel is marked, because the double tie made after the glide vowel is marked, serves to indicate both the blending of the glide vowel with the digraph and the sound of the digraph. But when the sound of any such digraph is indicated by some diacritical mark other than a tie (as **th**) the tie should be used to indicate the *blending* of the sounds *only*.

§ 8. When canceling a letter, the pupil should merely say "silent," as he draws the slant line.

§ 9. Never tie to a silent letter. Tie around it when the sounds of the letters preceding and following it are blended.

§ 10. Never tie a vowel to any consonant except r.

§ 11. Never tie two vowels together unless they form a proper diphthong.

When a diphthong is followed by r let one tie (from the left-hand vowel to the r) serve to indicate both the diphthongal sound and its blending with the r. Thus in marking and sounding the word **our** there is but one step—our.

§ 12. The sound of a vowel digraph should be indicated, if possible, by marking the left-hand vowel, as **break**, **thief**, but if the left-hand vowel cannot be thus marked, cancel it and give the proper mark to the right-hand vowel, as **feud**, **height**. Apply the same principle in marking vowel trigraphs, as **awa**, **eye**, **lieu**.

TABLE ILLUSTRATING STEPS EMPLOYED IN MARKING AND SOUNDING.

§ 13. The following table, in which are enumerated the steps for marking and sounding a few classifications, will enable the teacher to observe the proper order at all times.

Step	bring	crank	scratch	hoist	cures	dearth	theirs	scythes
1st	g	n	ch	st	s	ä	s	s
2d	n	nk	t	oist	ø	ē	i	ø
3d	ing	ank	atch	hoist	*ū	earth	ê	th
4th	br	e	e		ür̄es	déarth	éirs	th̄es
5th	bring	er	ser		e		th	yth̄es
6th		erānk	serātch		eūr̄es		thēirs	'ç
7th								ç
8th								scȳthes

\*Pupil should not sound, but say "long" as he places the macron.

†Pupil should not sound, but say "wave" as he places the tilde.

‡Pupil should not sound, but say "circumflex" as he places the circumflex.

| Pupil should first mark and sound e; then, as it is found to be an equivalent of the preceding consonant (æ = ss), he should mark it silent as the right-hand letter of a double consonant.

§ 14. Continue the above order until pupils have finished their study of the front-door keys and have learned to recognize them quickly. After that time, do not require pupils to sound separately an initial consonant or a front-door key, but as they mark such a consonant or key, let them blend its sound with the family name, thus pronouncing the word. The order will then be as follows: **ăt**, **eăt**; **ăb**, **erăb**.

## MANUAL.

---

### MOTION SIGNS.

Say nothing to pupils about learning to read when you begin the instruction. Let your first talk be about signs. Beckon to a little girl and ask her what that means. Her reply will be, "It means 'Come'."

Illustrate, by a simple movement of your right hand, that you wish a child to go away. Ask what is meant by a nod of the head. Ask if we can say "No," without speaking. Signify by a motion that you wish the window raised.

In this way lead pupils to see that these are motion signs; signs used to convey our meaning without the aid of the voice.

---

### VOICE SIGNS.

Ask pupils to laugh. Ask the meaning of a laugh and write down the answers given. Susie, perhaps, will say that a laugh means something funny; Lucy, that it shows when we are happy; Ned, that it is a sign that we are pleased. Ask about crying, moaning and groaning in the same way. Lead pupils to tell you that these are voice signs of pain or sorrow. You may also suggest here, that there are silent signs which express both pleasure and pain. We smile and we frown; we look pleased; we look sad.

Ask what voice signs are made by dogs; by cats; by hens; by roosters; by pigs; by ducks; by geese, etc. Draw from pupils, in turn, the meaning of these sounds. Dogs growl and bark when they feel cross; hens cackle and roosters crow when they are glad; pigs squeal when they are hurt or hungry.

Explain whisper signs by illustrations. The cat purrs when she is happy, but makes a different sound when she raises her back and tells the strange dog to go away. Who can make this whisper (f)?

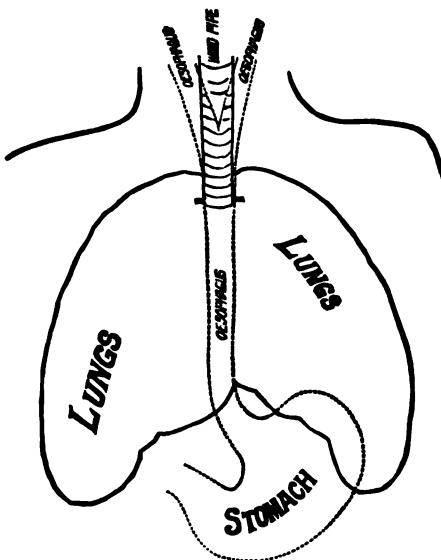
## BREATHING.

Explain about breathing. Pupils may press their hands against the sides of the strong boxes (the ribs) that hold their lungs. Show how the air gets into the lungs; first through the mouth and nose; then through the wind-pipe. Show how the lungs expand as we inhale. Illustrate by breathing exercises. Lead pupils to realize that, in this way, we pump the old air out and the fresh air into our lungs. Dwell upon the importance of pure, fresh air; also of standing straight while we breathe. Give children a drill of two or three minutes daily in breathing and physical exercises. (See Appendix.)

Show, by referring to this drawing, that the food does not reach the stomach through the windpipe. When the smallest piece of food loses its way, and gets into the windpipe, we make a voice sign which tells us of our mistake —we choke.

plays as it passes out from our lungs. Explain that when we whisper the air passes over these chords without moving them. "When we talk, do we send out our breath or draw it in? Let us see."

Here call upon pupils, in turn, to say something that they may realize that the talking is done (the sounds made) with the



NOTE.—The dotted lines represent the oesophagus and stomach, which lie under the windpipe and lungs.

Tell pupils about an *Aeolian* harp; of the music made when the wind moves its strings; also about the voice-harp the kind Father has given to each of us. Show where it is kept (in the upper part of the windpipe); of its fine chords, over which the air

out-going breath, but that we must continue taking in fresh air to keep up the supply.

If we handle this voice-harp rudely, its tones will be rough and harsh, but if we are careful to send soft, sweet words over its delicate strings, it will always give forth pleasant sounds; music that will cheer our own hearts and gladden all who listen as we speak.

If teachers have not been carefully *drilled* in phonics, let them practice the sounds of both vowels and consonants, standing before their mirrors and noting the exact positions of the organs of speech as they give utterance to the different sounds. Analyze words for this purpose. Say **b-at**; **c-an**; **d-and**, **f-an**; observing carefully how tongue, teeth and lips are called into service.

The first impulse of the voice in pronouncing a word will give the true sound of the vowel or consonant with which it begins. In thus studying, the sounds have no regard to the *names* of the letter. Bear in mind that the sounds and *names* are never identical, except in the case of the long vowels.

#### STENCIL PICTURES.

Use the Stencils in teaching the sounds. Place upon the upper part of the blackboard the picture of the lambs. Refer to this picture in connection with that portion of the Johnny Story which introduces the sound of **a** short.

After the pupils have become familiar with **a** short, place the picture of the top beside that of the lambs, and relate that part of the Johnny Story which introduces the sound of **m**. Continue to use the stencil pictures in this manner whenever a new sound is taught, reviewing daily the sounds already taught before introducing a new sound. Make a border of these pictures, and keep them on the board for daily reference in reviewing the sounds.

Each stencil picture should be placed upon the blackboard in the absence of the pupils, and should be concealed by a curtain or paper until it is needed. Do not show a new picture to the class until the time arrives for teaching the sound which that picture illustrates.

## WHAT LETTERS SAY.

Associate the sounds of the letters with the objects suggested in the "Johnny Story." Study this story carefully before you begin to instruct. (Pages 135 to 185.)

Talk to pupils about the letters. Ask if they ever heard mothers talk for their babies. The baby coos and mamma interprets; tells what it says. In this way pupils must give the sounds of the letters; they must sound aloud for some, whisper for others, and, in many cases, must say "silent," when they find one that neither speaks aloud nor whispers.

They must also think that, sometimes, two letters speak at once; and often we find two voice-letters together, one of which is silent while the other speaks aloud.

Relate a little of the "Johnny Story" each day; always enough to introduce one new sound. Ask questions about what has been told before you continue the story. As, after introducing the sound of **a** short, by speaking of the lamb's cry, ask pupils where Johnny Jones lived; where his mamma promised to take him; who went with him; who met them to take them to grandpa's farm.

Sing a stanza of "A Song of the Sounds" daily, as each new letter is introduced. Let there be a review of the singing of these stanzas each morning, the teacher pointing to the different consonants (printed upon the board for this purpose), as pupils sing.

## LADDERS.

Let the first busy work be the drawing of ladders with eight rounds. The teacher may count, as each round is drawn, in the presence of pupils, "one," "two," "three," "four," "five," etc.

Indicate the semi-tones by the half steps. Explain that the letters on the ladder occupy the same positions as the numbers and syllables on the music ladder.

For the lesson following, print **a** upon each round of the ladder you have drawn. Show that the letter must be placed exactly *on* the round; not in the space between. Sound **a** short, as you draw the first breve above (put on its breve-cap) and afterward ask pupils to sound as you place the breve above the other vowels. (Require the "marking" of capital letters.) After this letter has been presented upon the ladders (two of which will be needed for the small and the capital letters), sing up and down the new ladders and review those made upon the previous day.

It will be necessary to keep the ladders on the board for this purpose, drawing the new ones to the right of the others. When it is necessary to economize space, an excellent plan is to let the ladders occupy the upper part of the blackboard, where they should remain until all voiced consonants have been presented.

Pupils must be made to understand that they are to sound aloud as they mark words on the blackboard, and while marking lessons under the supervision of their teacher, but that they are to sound only in whispers at their seats.

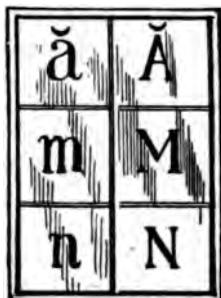
In teaching the consonants, lead them to realize that correct motions of the organs of speech are necessary to the production of correct sounds. Show that we can not give the sound of **l** with our lips closed nor of **m** with them open.

The teacher may make the lip motions without sounding the letters, calling upon pupils to give the sounds indicated.

## WINDOW AND LETTER SONGS.

After presenting three letters by means of the ladders, teach pupils to draw a window. They must first draw, without the drapery, a window sash with six panes. Draw first upon the blackboard, afterward upon their slates.

The teacher should draw the first window directly under the ladders and let it remain there for review singing. Print upon



these window-panes the three letters above mentioned, and sing to the air of "Thumbkins," found upon page 227:

Letter one is a;  
Letter two is A;  
Three and four are m and M;  
Five and six are n and N.

*Chorus:* Sound and sing, ye merry little ones:  
a A; m M; n and N.

(Place the breve above the vowel, as this letter is printed on the board.)

The teacher must point to each letter as its sound is sung. Desire pupils to copy this window a second time on their slates, this time printing the letters on the window panes. Pursue this plan as you present the other consonants. After drawing three ladders present the same consonants in the window beneath. Also print letter-songs and leave upon the board for daily

singing; as, to the air of "Yankee Doodle," sing (placing the diacritical marks above each vowel):

a, m, a, m, a, m, a, m;  
n, l, n, l, n, l;  
v, w, v, w, v, w, v, w;  
m, n, l, a, v, n.

Do not fail to let the pointer touch each letter, as pupils sing. As soon as the consonant sounds and the sound of **a** short become perfectly familiar by means of the story, the illustrations and the singing, introduce *families* of words. Say: "All words ending in **at** belong to the **at** family. We may think of these as of the children of Mr. **At**." Observe this plan throughout; do not speak of the *grouping* of words, but refer to their *families*. Show how easily resemblances can be traced by covering the consonants that begin such words as **bat**, **cat**, **rat**.

---

#### MAKE SCALES.

Explain what is meant by the term "Make Scales." By this, pupils may understand that we desire them to repeat the family name eight times (up and down the **d** scale) for the purpose of making it familiar by singing.

As they may tire of drawing ladders, these need not be continued after the consonant sounds are learned; for this reason we present the family names in scales. Print scales of these three family names, side by side,—**ab**, **am**, **ap**—and leave them upon the board for daily practice. Call attention to the position of the lips, as each family name is pronounced. In the first instance they are pressed together; in the second they merely meet; in the third they meet and fly apart.

Sing up and down these scales slowly; never so rapidly as to make distinct articulation impossible. Also sing these names alternately, that pupils may realize the change in the position of the lips; as, **ab**, **ap**.

Desire pupils to sound as you place the breve above each vowel.

For busy work they may copy the scales of **ab**, **am** and **ap** upon their slates, sounding the vowels in a low yet audible tone as the breves are drawn above.

---

#### FAMILIES OF WORDS.

After these scales have been sung until each can be readily recognized by sight, show pupils how to blend consonant sounds with these family names. Take, first, the family of **ap**, because more familiar words can be found in this than in the other two.

Ask for the cross dog's growl; as the pupils respond, print **r** in front of **ap** and ask pupils to sound, and afterward say quickly, **rap**. Let this be repeated until the word **rap** is recognized. Rap on the desk as an illustration of this word.

If pupils have been drilled upon the sound of the "fish bones," tell them that we shall hereafter speak of these as **k**=No. 1 **q**=No. 2 and **e**=No. 3. Here ask for No. 3.

As you print the **c** in front of **ap**, say: "This letter does not stand for the fish bone sound yet. I must draw a line through it. You may think of this line as the fish bone that troubled Johnny. It will teach us to draw the line as we make this sound. Let us run the sound of this **c** right into the family name **ap**." Repeat this until the ear catches the familiar word **cap**.

"Let us see if we can form a word with the second lip-consonant, **m**. Now, lips together until we open them to say 'ap.' (Here sound, repeatedly, "**m-ap**, **m-ap**," after which ask, "Who can tell the meaning of this word?")

Ask for the sound of the consonant that takes the tongue (nearest the point) up to the roof of the mouth. Print **l** in front of **ap**, and proceed as with the others.

Print **ap** upon the inner section of the Rotary, and all the consonants upon the outer section. Rotate the latter slowly, pausing only where familiar words can be formed by blending the consonant sound with the family name. Present, in this way, the four words already introduced. Pupils may sound rapidly as the board revolves.

Show that there are other "word-children" in this family, by presenting **tap** and **sap**. Call pupils up, in turn, to rotate the board, moving it rapidly past the consonants that do not form words. For instance: do not permit **d** to stop in front of **ap**. Suggest that these are the "word-children" of Mr. **Ap**, each marching in and pausing in front long enough for us to pronounce his or her name.

Introduce scales of family names composed of **a** short, in connection with tongue consonants; as

**ad      an      at      ag.**

Sing these scales daily, calling attention to the change in the position of the tongue as each name is pronounced; how **d** presses it against the hard palate; **n** just makes it touch, and **t** makes it touch and run away; how **g** hard presses it nearer the middle.

Sing from left to right to the air of "Greenville" (music found upon page 224) pronouncing with great distinctness:

ad	an	at	ag
an	ad	ag	at
ag	at	an	ad
at	an	ag	

Be sure to give the **a** its short sound. Build up words by prefixing consonants to these family names. Ask for the cross dog's growl and form **rat**; for the letter with the fish bone across it, for **cat**. (Ask if this is not sometimes true: Does not the cat often follow the rat?) Ask for the two letters that close the lips (**b-at** and **m-at**); for the lip-letter that "plays tag" (**p-at**); for the **man** lip-letter that plays tag (**P-at**). Show the difference: one means to use the hand; the other begins a boy's name. Ask for kitty's hiss, and form **fat**.

Print **at** upon the inner section of the Rotary, and see how many familiar words may be formed by its rotation. Rotate rapidly past

the consonants that do not form words. Place the Rotary where it can be plainly seen by all, and ask pupils to try to form other words with consonants prefixed to the family name.

In presenting the family of **ad** upon the Rotary, form words with **b, h, l, m, p** and **s**. After pupils have been made familiar with these words by the rotation of the outer section, leave the Rotary in full view and ask them to form others upon their slates. Take words with **an** in the same way. First present them upon the Rotary and afterward ask pupils to print them upon their slates. Teach them the stanza

“Finding this **c** in front of a  
We mark and sound it **ɛ**,”

and desire them to sing, as you mark **c** in **cat** and **can**.

In building up words with **ag**, pupils may sing

“Finding this letter after **a**,  
We mark and sound it **g**,”

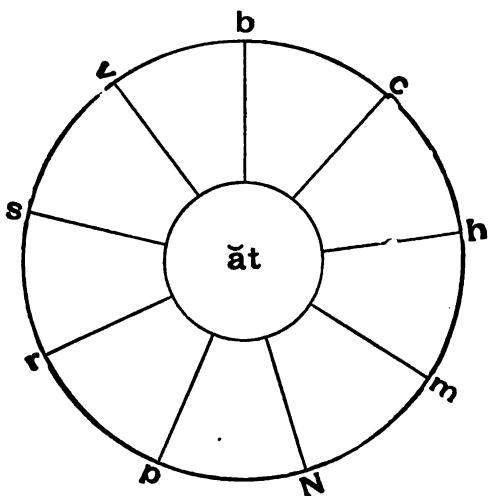
as a line is drawn above this letter.

(Here explain that **g** final is hard, when it follows a short vowel.)

In such words as **bag**, **rag**, **tag**, remind pupils that there are two letters to mark in each word—the first, **g**, the next, **a**. Begin at the right hand to mark the letters of a word, because, as a rule, the sound of a letter is determined by the letter or letters following it.

## WORD BUILDING.

Let the busy work which follows consist of the printing of the family names in scales, and after this have pupils build up words by prefixing consonants to the former. For more busy work, pupils may make pictures of wheels. Place the family name in the center. Let the spokes represent the number of words that can be formed by prefixing consonants to this name. As, in the family of **at**, make a wheel with nine spokes. By reference to the



outer section of the Rotary, pupils may select such consonants as may be joined to **at** in the formation of words; after which these words may be printed in a line to the right of the wheel.

Form wheels of all the three-letter words found on the 24th page of the Spellers. All this is, of course, preparatory to the marking of the Spellers and it is, really, the only slow part of the work. As soon as pupils are led to attain independence in the marking of words, more time should be given them for their busy work.

As to the time required to pronounce three-letter words correctly, it is impossible to state definitely, because of the varied

ability of teachers and of pupils. If the first ten minutes after the opening exercises be devoted to the consonant sounds and this be followed by a half hour of busy work with slates and pencils at their seats, these sounds should be made familiar during the first month, provided pupils have the drill of a morning and afternoon term. If, however, double the time be given for busy work, the progress will, of course, be proportionately rapid.

Copy the words found on the 24th page of the Spellers and call pupils up, in turn, to mark (the class sounding in concert as this is done), after which the marking of the words in the book should begin. If the board drill has been thorough, pupils can readily mark and pronounce these words. Do not fail to require the sounding of the letters as they are marked. Pupils must not *whisper a vowel sound* nor the sound of *a voice consonant*. The ear should be trained, as well as the eye and the memory.

Insist upon the marking of the words in the Spellers. The price of the book is insignificant as compared with the beneficial results which are sure to follow this daily work upon the *printed page*. The repeated marking of a word not only makes it familiar; it also fixes the orthography of that word in the child's memory. Hence this finger work, in connection with the sounding of the letters, leads to correct spelling as well as to accurate reading. Permit pupils to devote all the time, heretofore given to the writing of spelling lessons, to marking the printed page, and compare results with classes which have had daily drills in the other method. This marking should be continued through the Speller, Primer and First Reader. When written words are presented for copying, pupils enjoy marking them and these writing lessons serve as reviews of the words already learned.

Here, too, words should be dictated for written spelling.

## NAME-WORDS.

Begin your Language Lessons while teaching the sounds of the consonants. Explain the meaning of name-word; show the difference between the object and its name. Ask if a boy wears the name cap upon his head, or if he wears the object this name represents. Ask, daily, for name-words that represent what we can see—in the schoolroom; on the street; in a parlor; in a kitchen. Ask for the names of objects we can feel, hear, smell or taste, and teach them gradually to recognize all such name-words. By devoting a few moments, daily, to name-words, pupils will be ready to recognize them by the time they are able to pronounce these words.

Explain the rising and falling inflections by illustrations. Lead pupils to repeat after you, "John, John, Mary, Mary." If they fail in giving the falling inflection, ask them to bow their heads as the words are spoken. Ask if they can tell the name-words on the pages they have marked. If so, they may run a line under each, and pronounce it with the falling inflection; as, **cat**, **rat**, **fan**. Tell them we call this emphasizing the name-words. We do this when we talk, and reading is talking; it is just telling the stories naturally.

---

## SINGULAR AND PLURAL NUMBER.

Follow these talks about name-words with a lesson on Number. Explain the meaning of singular and plural. Pupils may raise *one* hand, *two* hands; touch *one* ear, *two* ears; wipe *one* eye, *two* eyes; pat *one* cheek, *two* cheeks; bend *one* finger, *four* fingers. Lead them to realize that there is an additional sound in words of the plural number.

Print **cat, cats, cap, caps,** and point to each final **s.** Explain that this **s** tells us there are more **cats** or **caps** than one. Ask for words of the plural number only. "How many fingers--toes--eyes--ears--hands have we?" Hereafter let the printing, marking and sounding of the plurals of all name-words found in the lessons follow the marking and pronouncing in the Spellers.

In taking a new lesson in the Spellers, let the first step be to present its words upon the board and call upon pupils in turn, to mark as the class sounds.

Secondly, require the marking, sounding and pronouncing of these words in the Spellers.

Thirdly, the underscoring of all the name-words, pronouncing them with the falling inflection.

Fourthly, the printing, marking and pronouncing of the plurals of these name-words upon the slates.

Fifthly, follow each pronouncing lesson from the Speller with a corresponding lesson from the Primer.

---

### THE LETTER **S.**

The addition of **s** to form plurals will give pupils two consonants at the end of each word. Tell them it does not always speak in the same tone. Sometimes it speaks aloud; sometimes it whispers. When it makes a loud sound, it says just what the letter **z** does. When it whispers, we may think of the sound that chased the piggies away. This "whisper" we call "true **s.**" It always talks in this way when found at the beginning of the words we are now learning. In words of four, five or six letters when we find two of these consonants together at the end, we may know that we must mark out the one at the right hand and think of the other as saying **s.** Print **ss** eight times, and desire pupils to say "silent" as you mark out the right hand letter.

Mark and sound the following words, calling attention to the

fact that, in every instance, **s** whispers because it begins the word; **sap**, **sat**, **Sam**.

Print upon the board **ps**, **ts**, **ks**, and **fs**, and lead pupils to understand that when **s** follows **p**, **t**, **k** or **f** it must have its true sound. Teach the first and second stanzas of the song entitled "The Crooked Mark," found on page 237, as you point to these final consonants. Show that **s** whispers when the consonant in front of it whispers.

---

#### BACK-DOOR KEYS.

When a word ends in two or more consonants which speak together, we "tie" these letters—*i. e.*, connect them with a curved line drawn beneath them, to show that they must be sounded with a single impulse of the voice. We call such a combination of consonants a "back-door key." We must lock the door of one word before we turn the door-knob (sound the first consonant) or unlock—tie the key of—the word following. It takes longer to lock some back doors than others, but we must be careful to see that the key is turned before we try to open the door of the next word. If we do not sound as we tie, we shall not be sure of this.

Here is a hard key;—**ts**. We must hear ourselves say "**ts**," to be sure that the door is locked. Again, we must be sure to give the *right* sound; otherwise the back-door will not close tightly. In marking the word **cats**, if we should sound **st** as we tie **ts**, do you not see that the former key would not fit?

Pupils may come to the board and mark, in turn, the following words: **bats**, **cats**, **hats**, **mats**, **rats**, **vats**, **caps**, **laps**, **maps**, **naps**, **raps**, **taps**.

Call attention to the fact that **s** final is true in each word, because it follows **p** or **t**.

In marking the word **cats**: first step, tie the back-door key as you sound; second, mark **a** short as you sound the family name; third, mark **c** hard; fourth, pronounce the word.

Make scales of the families of **ats** and **aps**, and sing up and down.

Require distinct articulation.

---

### THE LETTER **S** CONTINUED.

Draw scales of **z** and **s**, after which show pupils how to place the suspended bar under the latter. When a consonant, (as **s**) has more than one sound, always teach its true sound first (**s** surd). Do not teach an equivalent, or occasional sound of the letter (**s** sonant), until you have taught that sound from the letter (**z**) of which it is the true sound. Then teach the equivalent sound of one letter as being equal to the true sound of the other. In this case, the sound which is to be taught is the true sound of the letter **z**. The letter **s** sometimes has that sound, and the suspended bar is used to make the letter **s** say **z**. Pupils have learned that **s** is unmarked when it follows **p**, **t**, **k** or **f**. Present the following keys and show that when found after any consonant other than **p**, **t**, **k** or **f** we must place a suspended bar under **s**, and sound it "z."

**bs, ds, gs, ls, ms, ns, rs.**

In these combinations, we must place the suspended bar under **s** before we tie the two consonants for the back-door key of the word in which they are found. The order of marking and sounding the word **cabs** should be, **g**, **bs**, **abs**, **e**, **eabs**. (See "Marking and Sounding," page 24). Sing the second stanza of the "Crooked Mark" (page 237) as pupils mark **s** final in the following words:

**cabs, pads, bags, hams, pans.**

Whenever columns of words are presented upon the board for marking, require pupils to show that they recognize name-words,

by underscoring them. They may, also, mention their number: as, **cabs**, a name-word of the plural number; **cats**, a name-word of the plural number. Do not hasten with three-letter words or their plurals. The child grows familiar with them, not only by the marking and sounding of the letters, but also by the underscoring of these words for emphasis and by learning how to form plurals by the addition of **s**. (Spellers, 25th page.)

Teachers will find this more profitable work and productive of better results than where days are devoted to individual words such as **rat** or **boy**. It is the constant *doing* upon the part of the pupil that makes the Synthetic Method a success. If the teacher lead pupils on, step by step, in these first lessons, giving them ample time daily for their busy work, they will gradually attain such independence in marking that all words within their comprehension will be readily recognized. The habit of self-reliance will become so strong they will need no assistance, except when new families are introduced. It is in the marking of these three and four letter-words that the foundation for correct pronunciation is laid. Do not, therefore, permit pupils to take a new page of the Speller until every word upon the old page *can be pronounced without hesitation*. Remember that although the eye is trained by the voice and fingers it has *its* work to perform, and this work is an instant recognition of the words presented.

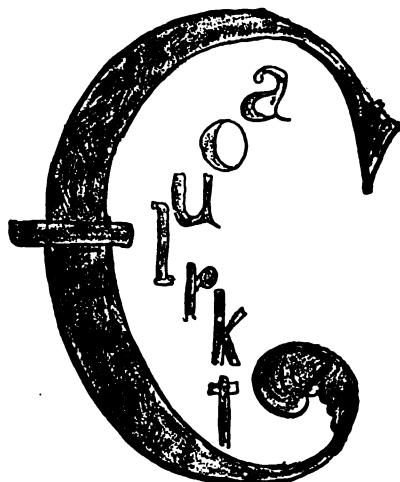
---

#### THE ACK FAMILY.

Begin with the final consonants of this family; show that these are composed of two "fish-bone letters"; that, as these letters have the same sound, we must mark one silent. Print **bac** and ask pupils to sound; now print **back** and show that we do not say **bac-k**; we do not sound the **e** and the **k** when we pronounce this word; for this reason we must mark one letter silent. In such combinations we always mark the right-hand letter silent. Print **ck** a number of times and mark

out each **k**: after which sing with pupils as you lay the fish-bone across **c**:

"Finding the **c** in front of **k**,  
"We mark and sound it **-e**."  
(See page 233, for "Songs.")



For busy work pupils may print long lines of **ck** upon their slates, after which let them draw a line across **k** from left to right, saying, "silent, **-e**," as they mark these letters. Next present a scale of the family of **ack**. Show that **a** always wears a breve-cap when found in front of these consonants;—**ck**.

Call one pupil up to mark this scale as the rest sound: first step, mark **k** silent; second, mark **c** hard; third, mark **a** short; fourth, pronounce **ack**.

Pupils may sing this family name, taking great care to sing slowly enough to articulate distinctly.

Print **ack** upon the inner section of the Rotary, calling pupils up, in turn, to present the word as you pronounce it. As you say "back", Mary may rotate the board until **b** is on the line with **ack**, when all may pronounce **back**. Call upon John to form **pack** and upon pupils to pronounce as this word is presented. Susie may form **sack**, etc. Ask pupils to come in turn, to the

board, and prefix consonants to the scale of **ack**, each pupil thus forming a new word.

Let the busy work that follows this be the printing of words of the **ack** family upon the slates by reference to the consonants on the outer section of the Rotary. Commend the pupil who brings the largest number of words.

### THE AND FAMILY.

In introducing the family of **and**, begin with **nd**. Make a scale of these letters and explain that **nd** is a back-door key because it represents the last sound of the word. We must learn to run the sounds of these letters together (to turn the key as we close the back door). As these are both tongue-letters, we have only to press our tongues a little harder after sounding **n** to produce the sound of **d**. Pupils may sound as the teacher ties:

**nd, nd, nd.**

Sing up and down the scales of **nd**. Pupils may copy these scales upon their slates and afterward tie these back-door keys.

For the next drill make a scale of **and**, and call upon one pupil to mark as the others sound.

The order of marking and sounding should be: **nd**, **and**.

Sing up and down this scale, sounding the **nd** each time with great distinctness. Build up words of this family by the use of the Rotary; also by calling upon pupils to prefix consonants to this family name, after which they may group the words of the **and** family upon their slates.

Do not refer to exceptions *as* exceptions. After pupils are made perfectly familiar with words of the **and** family, tell them that they will find words which look like these, but are not found among them.

Here print **wand** and inclose it in a circle. Say: "We will

not mark this word now; but will wait until we are introduced to the family to which it belongs. There is one curious fact about this consonant **w**; it does not like to have **a** wear a breve cap; so, whenever we find these two letters (**wa**) at the beginning of a word, we must remember this, and wait until we learn what **w** wants **a** to say. Who will remember this, when we come to the families to which the words **wand** and **wart** belong?"

### THE ANG FAMILY.

Make a scale of **ng**. Lead pupils to understand that **n** is a nasal sound. Prove this. If the nostrils be pressed by the fingers, this sound cannot be produced. In the scale presented, show that the **g** final must not be marked hard; we must mark it silent when these consonants are found together. Show the change in the position of the tongue in sounding **n** and **g**. This proves that **g** must be marked silent. If we tie these two letters, they must be sounded **ng**, which is plainly incorrect.

In singing up this scale, observe how little space there is between the teeth. Make a scale of **ang** to the right of the scale **ng**. Sing up one and down the other. Pupils may copy both these scales. Show, by moving the outer section of the Rotary, how few words are found in the **ang** family.

Print words with **ang** and **ag**, side by side, and call upon pupils to mark, alternately, that they may remember always to mark **g** hard when it follows a short vowel, but to mark it silent when it follows **n**; as **rag**, **rang**, **tag**, **sang**, **bag**, **bang**.

### THE ANK FAMILY.

Make the sounds of **n** and **n** alternately and call attention to the different positions of the tongue. Make scales of **n** and **n** and sing.

Lead pupils to understand that we draw a line under **n**, when we wish to sound with the back of the tongue. After this is made plain tell them *when* to draw this line under. Whenever **g** or **k** follows **n** we must underline; in words with **nk** we must first underline and then tie as we sound these consonants. Say "thank," and lead pupils to recognize that the proper pronunciation is "thank" and not "thank."

For busy work pupils may print columns of **nk** upon their slates, and afterward mark as they sound the **n** and tie the consonants.

Make scales of **ank**.

Call one pupil forward to mark these scales as the others sound.

Observe order of "Marking and Sounding." (See table, page 25.)

Show how few words can be formed by prefixing consonants to **ank**. Present only such familiar words on the Rotary as **bank**, **rank**, **sank**, and **tank**.

For busy work pupils may draw wheels of the **ack**, **and**, **ang** and **ank** families. When these are finished they may count the spokes of each and show the number by writing the figures below.

After this board drill, pupils may mark, sound and pronounce all the words found upon the 27th page of the Spellers. If the scales have been made familiar by singing, the word will be recognized when the consonant sound blends with the family name. Do not, however, suppose that the words become familiar to the eye of the pupil *as soon as they are marked*. Practice is necessary. Ask Mary to pronounce the first word of the **ack** family; Henry, the second; Robert, the third; Willie, the fourth, etc.

Desire that all name-words be underscored, after which call up the class to pronounce these with the falling inflection. Require the plurals of these name-words printed upon the slates; the suspended bar placed under **s** when it does not follow **p**, **t**, **k**,

or **f**; the back-door keys tied and the vowels marked short, after which these plurals may be pronounced with the falling inflection. Give a review of the Language Lesson on Number, in connection with these words.

---

### FRONT-DOOR KEYS.

Explain that all the consonants found in front of the first vowel of a word constitute its front-door key. If we wish to enter a room, the door of which is locked, we must find the right key. So with a word. We must give the correct sound of its first letters before our voices can really enter the word. As we tie and sound these consonants we will think we are unlocking the front door of the word.

Print the following keys upon the board, and ask pupils to sound as the teacher ties:

**bl, br, dr, dw, fl, fr, pl, pr, sl, sm, sn, sh, st, sw, tr, tw.**

Explain that the sounds of these consonants must be given with a single impulse of the voice.

For busy work pupils may copy each key six times, sounding as they tie. Leave these keys upon the board for a shooting match, which must be conducted in the following manner: pupils may take the pointer, each in turn, and touch a key as the teacher sounds it. If the right key is hit, let the marksman have another trial. But if he should miss the mark he must yield his gun to the next sportsman.

Lead pupils to see that words are composed of front-door keys and family names; as, **fl-ap, fl-at, pl-an, sl-am, pl-ank, st-and.**

Introduce words with front and back-door keys for marking; as, **black, brand, Frank, stand, prank, gland, grant.**

Call upon one pupil to mark while the rest sound. Follow this board-drill with the marking, sounding and pronouncing of the words with front-door keys found upon the 28th page of the

Spellers. When the words on this page have become familiar, underscore the name-words and pronounce them with the falling inflection. Also, copy the plurals of these name-words upon the slates, and mark as in the previous lesson.

### C AND G KEYS.

In the following keys the **c** and **g** must first be marked and the consonants tied afterward; as, cl, cr, gl, gr. Copy from the 29th page of the Spellers all the words beginning with the above keys. Call pupils up, in turn, to mark these words. Follow this with the usual marking of the printed page.

### WHISPER KEYS.

Show how they differ from other keys. Their sounds can not be separated. If we are not sure of the sound of **bl**, we can first sound **b** and then **l**, after which we can blend these sounds. But not so with whisper keys; they always speak together and never aloud. We must, therefore, tie and sound these keys until we can recognize them by sight. The whisper keys are

#### **Sh, Ch, Th, Wh.**

Pupils may print columns of these whisper-keys upon their slates, and afterward tell the sound each key makes as it is turned (the consonants tied). They may sound in whispers as they tie the letters.

For board-drill print the following words: **shall, sham, shank.** Show that **sh** is sometimes found to be a back-door key; as, **dash, lash, mash, sash, crash, trash.**

$$\mathbf{tch} = \mathbf{ch}.$$

Present this (**tch**) equivalent of **ch** and show that it is always found to be a back-door key; also, that **t** never speaks when found in front of **ch**, because the sound of **t** is contained in **ch**.

Ask pupils to sound **t** and **ch** alternately, that they may realize that the position of the tongue is the same; that is, that **t** and the first sound of **ch** take the front of the tongue to the hard palate. Because of this, you must always mark **t** silent when it is followed by **ch**.

Present words for marking; as, **chap**, **chat**, **champ**; also, **catch**, **hatch**, **latch**, **match**, **patch**, **snatch**, **scratch**.

#### TH (BREATH).

Present first the whisper. Show that we tie underneath to indicate this sound. Refer to the geese in the Johnny Story. Show that the point of the tongue is pressed against the edge of the upper teeth, and when in this position we blow our breath hard against it. Present the key **thr** and show that these consonants always whisper when **r** follows them; perhaps they are afraid of this "growl," for **r** always speaks aloud, although not in so cross a way as when he stands in front of such words as **rat**, **rap** and **ran**. Also give **th** breath when these consonants end the words; as, **health**, **wealth**. Show **with** to be an exception. Leave **s** unmarked when it follows the whisper **th**.

#### WH.

In presenting **wh**, hold up a fore-finger to represent a candle and blow out the light. Pupils may sound, alternately, **w** and **wh**; they will thus be led to realize the difference; **w** pushes some voice through, while **wh** makes a pair of bellows of the cheeks and forces out only breath. (Hold fore-finger and thumb to each cheek as this whisper is produced.) Show that **wh** must always be tied when it is followed by **a**; as, **whack**.

#### TH (VOICE).

Here we find the same consonants; they speak at the same time, but do not whisper. They speak aloud. To show this difference, we must connect them in another way. We must run a line through these consonants instead of tying underneath. Did

you ever hear the sound a woolen mill makes? If so, imitate it as you sound **th** (voice).

Pupils may make two separate columns of **th**, and be careful to give the correct sounding as the different ties are made: also, print the following words for marking;—**that, than, thrash, thwack.** (Spellers, page 30.)

### THREE-LETTER KEYS.

Present the following words to show that some words have three-letter keys: **sprang, strap, scrap, thrash, scratch, splash, thwack.** (Follow this drill with the marking and tying of similar words in Spellers, page 31.)

Review the **a** short families of words and deduce this phonic principle:

*When it is the only vowel in the word, but not its final letter, a is short, unless followed by r or preceded by w.*

NOTE.—There are a number of families of words which are exceptions to this principle, as the **alm, ask, all, etc.** families.

---

### OBSCURE A.

When this vowel stands alone (forms a word by itself), place an inverted breve under it to indicate its obscure sound. Explain what this obscure sound is. Make it similar to **u** short; only be sure to shorten this sound. Make scales of **A=a**, placing inverted breves under each vowel.

When this vowel precedes a name-word a straight line should be drawn from the inverted breve under the vowel to the end of the name-word, to indicate that the two words must be sounded as one and that the emphasis must fall upon the name-word, as a cat.

### ADJECTIVES.

Present sentences for marking in which obscure **a** is found, in connection with adjectives; as, "Sam had a black cat;" "Nan had a black fan."

Lead pupils to understand they may underscore words that signify color; as, *red, blue, green*; also, *black* and *white*.

Introduce adjectives by showing they describe name-words. Any word which answers the questions, "What kind of a \_\_\_\_?"; or, "What kind of \_\_\_\_?"; or, "How many?", is an adjective; as, "What kind of a cap does John wear?"; "What kind of gloves has Mary?"; "How many fingers have you?"; "How many toes?"

Require pupils to answer in complete sentences. Write these answers and underscore the adjectives and name-words. After which, read for the pupils; as, "John wears a *black cap*"; "Mary wears *kid gloves*"; "I have *eight fingers*, and *two thumbs*"; "I have *ten toes*"; "My hen has *ten little, downy, white chicks*."

#### E OBSCURE EQUAL TO A OBSCURE.

Make scales of  $\text{e}=\underline{\text{a}}$ . We here present a new letter; the new vowel (**e**). This obscure sound parts the teeth but slightly, yet enough to prove it is a voice-letter. Sing up and down the scales, without any movement of teeth or lips. Pupils may copy the scales upon their slates, sounding softly as the inverted breve is placed under each vowel.

Make scales of **th** (voice), after which add **e**, marking the latter with the inverted breve. In this way develop the word **the**. Show that the vowel in this word must be marked with the inverted breve when it is followed by a word beginning with a consonant; also, that we must tie the obscure **e** to the word following it, emphasizing the latter as we underscore it, just as we tied obscure **a**. As, the cat, the black fan.

Present the following words for marking, after which pupils may read as the teacher ties the obscure vowels to their name words and underscores the latter. Give the least possible sound to the obscure vowels: **the man; the cat; the fan; the hat**. This tying is to remind us that the word in which the obscure vowel is found must be spoken lightly. (When **the** precedes a word beginning with a vowel, mark **e** long-obscure, and do not tie to the word following. As, **the eggs**.)

Follow this board-drill with the marking and tying of **e** obscure to the word following it. Speller, page 25.

Follow this with the reading lesson arranged for **a** short. Teach pupils to read the pictures wherever these are substituted for words. The explanation about **a** and **e** obscure should precede the first reading lesson in the Primer.

---

#### A TALK ABOUT E SHORT.

Make ladders of **ē—Ē**(short) and **ā—Ā** (short), placing the breve over each vowel. Sing up and down. Call attention to the difference in the position of the organs of speech when we sound **a** and **e** short; how much nearer the teeth must be brought together for the latter. Alternate the sounds, as you sing up and down. Make double scales of **e** short, and desire pupils to sing as they beat time with their right hands—thus:

e e  
e e  
e e

Present families in **e** short, just as the **a** short families were given. First form families with the three lip-letters (**eb**, **em** and **ep**), and sing up and down. As so few three-letter words with **e** ending in **b** or **m** can be found, do not try to form words with these consonants. Desire pupils to copy these families.

Present words with **e** short ending in the tongue-letters. Sing up on **ed**; down on **en**; up on **et**; down on **eg**. Also sing from left to right to the air of "Greenville." Do not run the sounds of the family names together as you sing. Always mark the letters before you sing:

ed en et eg  
ed en et eg  
ed en et eg  
en et eg.

Place, in turn, each family name upon the inner section of the board, and rotate, as pupils sound the new word presented.

Pupils may draw wheels upon their slates, printing a family name in the center of each, and consonants where the spokes join the tire, after which form columns of words by prefixing consonants to the family name. Mark, sound and pronounce words on page 32 of the Spellers. As a guide to this word-building, the teacher may print upon the board the following, to be used as a

TABLE OF REFERENCE:

Take **end**, with **b, l, s, bl** and **sp**.

“ **ent**, “ **b, l, s, t, w** and **sp**.

“ **ell**, “ **b, f, N, s, t, w, sp, sh, sm** and **sw**

“ **ess**, “ **B, l, dr, pr, ch** and **cr**.

“ **est**, “ **b, l, n, p, r, w, cr** and **bl**.

After forming these words, desire pupils to pronounce them from their slates, giving distinct utterance to the final consonants. Let the work on page 33 of Spellers follow this drill. Give drills upon words ending in **xt** and **st**. Speak of these finals as back-door keys. We must lock the back-door of one word before we open the next with a front-door key.

Say “**The next step**,” “**The best stem**.”

Show the difference between “**The last strain**” and “**The last train**.”

Copy the “**e short words**” with keys from the pages of the Spellers and call upon pupils to come, in turn, and mark, the class sounding as the letters are marked.

Print columns of **ll** and **ss** upon the board. Explain that only one of these consonants can be heard in the spoken word, therefore the right-hand consonant must be marked silent. In marking and sounding the word **bell**, the order would be: “**silent**,” **ell**, **bell**. See page 25, § 8, and page 24, § 4.

Follow this board drill with the marking of the four letter words with **e** short, found upon pages 33 and 34 of the Spellers, after which underscore the name-words and pronounce them with the falling inflection. Pupils may copy name-words from the Spellers and form plurals by the addition of **s**. Mark these words and pronounce from the slates. Call upon pupils to sing the different stanzas of "The Crooked Mark," as these plurals are marked. Present the words **steps**, **frets** and **pecks**, as the first stanza is sung. Present **beds**, **pens**, **hems**, **hens**, and **kegs** for the second. Remind pupils why we place the suspended bar under **s**. (Because this consonant does not follow **t**, **p**, **k** or **f**.)

From the **e** short families, deduce this phonic principle:

*When it is the only vowel in the word, but not its final letter, e is short, unless followed by r.*

a—e

Show that there are words where **a** has the sound of **e** short and when these are found they must be marked with a line through the **a**. In each of the following words we find two vowels: **says**, **said**. We must not tie these vowels, because one is silent; the one on the right hand. We must, therefore, mark it out and run the line through the first. As these are the only words of four letters in which we shall find that **a** equals **e** short, it will help us to remember this if we print and mark each ten times. We must also learn to think of them as belonging to the **e** short family. Mark and pronounce the words in Spellers, page 35, and in Reader lessons on **e** short. Underscore name-words and adjectives. Remind pupils how they may recognize adjectives by asking, "What kind of a —?" or, "How many?" Lead them to understand that the name-word must only be underscored the *first* time it occurs in the reading lesson. When the same name-word is repeated it must not

be emphasized; as, "Ned met *ten men*. The men had *ten red flags*." Here, as may be seen, the word men must not be emphasized a second time, although the adjective, *red*, is. As color and number words are introduced, show that these must be underscored. As soon as pupils can be led to recognize a new thought in a sentence they may be led to understand more clearly which words require emphasis

---

### A TALK ABOUT I SHORT.

In introducing this new vowel desire pupils to sound, alternately, *ă*, *ĕ*, *ĭ*, resting a finger against the lower teeth, that they may realize the difference in their position as these vowel sounds are produced. Explain that the rules governing words with *e* short apply to words of *i* short. Make scales and sing the families of *ip*, *id*, *it*, *ig*, *ick*, *ing*, *ink*, *iss* and *ill*. Sing daily, until these families are made familiar to the eye as well as to the ear. Call attention to the different positions of the tongue as the sounds of the final consonants are produced.

Present these different families, in turn, upon the Rotary, after which print this

#### TABLE OF REFERENCE

upon the board, and leave it there to aid pupils in building columns of words:

Take *id* with *b*, *d*, *k*, *l*, *r* and *sl*.

" *it* " *b*, *h*, *I*, *m*, *s*, *w*, *sl*, *fl* and *spl*.

" *ig*, " *p*, *d*, *f*, *w* and *br*.

" *ick* " *D*, *p*, *r*, *s*, *st*, *ch* and *cl*.

" *ing* " *r*, *s*, *w*, *st*, *sw*, *br*, *cl*, *fl* and *sw*.

" *ink* " *k*, *l*, *m*, *p*, *r*, *s*, *w*, *th*, *ch*, *cl*, *br* and *dr*.

" *iss* " *h*, *k* and *m*.

" *ill* " *b*, *h*, *m*, *p*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *w*, *sp*, *st*, *dr* and *thr*.

" *itch* " *d*, *h*, *n*, *p* and *st*.

After printing, marking and pronouncing these words, desire pupils to go over them a second time, adding *s* to all name-words,

tying this final **s** to the letter in front to show the back-door key of the word and lastly, *pronouncing the word distinctly*; as, in the third column of the above, they can, by the addition of **s** form the words **pigs**, **figs**, **wigs** and **brigs**. Remind them to place the suspended bar under **s** when it does not follow **p**, **t**, **k** or **f**.

$$\dot{e} = \text{I}$$

Present the word **been**. Draw a circle around it to show that **it** is a "runaway."

Desire pupils to make scales of  $\dot{e} = i$ . Mark out the right hand vowel of the word **been** and place a dot over the first vowel; as, **béen**. Pupils may copy and mark this word ten times.

Follow this board-drill with the marking, sounding and pronouncing of all the words in **i** short found on pages 36, 37, 38 and 39 of the Spellers. Require the underscoring of the name-words and the formation of their plurals. Pronounce the words in the Spellers frequently; until they become familiar to the eye.

Let the reading lesson, embracing the **i** short words, follow. First, mark, sound and pronounce the words; next, underscore name-words and adjectives; and lastly, *read naturally*. Do not fail to intersperse Language with each reading lesson.

Give a talk on the meaning of the possessive case, as illustrated on the 25th page of First Reader.

---

#### A TALK ABOUT O SHORT.

Give this vowel a very short sound. Say, alternately, **I**, **ó**, with the finger in the mouth, that you may realize that the latter sound parts the teeth more than the former. Call attention to the rounding of the lips as you sound **o** short. Make a letter song and sing, observing the change in teeth and lips as these sounds are produced. Sing to the air of "Greenville," placing breves over all the vowels before singing.

Review the phonic principle given for **e** and **i** and show that it applies to **o**.

Make scales of families of **o** short and sing. Let the teacher insist upon the distinct utterance of the final consonants. Pupils must not sing too rapidly. Prepare the following table for word-building. Be sure to drill pupils thoroughly on the family names before permitting them to build words.

TABLE OF REFERENCE (FOR WORD-BUILDING).

Take **ob** with **B, h, r, s, and m.**

- " **od** " **G, h, n, p, r, s and sh.**
- " **op** " **f, h, m, p, t, st, cr, dr, sh and ch.**
- " **ot** " **h, l, p, r, s, pl, sh, bl and sp.**
- " **ock** " **l, m, r, s, sh, cr and bl.**
- " **ong** " **g, l, s, str and thr.**
- " **oss** " **b, l, m, R, t, gl and fl.**

Add **s** wherever name-words can be made and pronounce these a second time. Give frequent drills upon the pronunciation of the following words: **loss, toss, moss, lost, cost, frost.**

Some orthoepists suggest a prolonged sound of **o** short when it is directly followed by **ss, st** and **th**. Also in **gone, cough, trough**, and in some words ending in **ng**.

Follow the line of work in Spellers and Readers laid down for words with **a, e** and **i** short.

If you desire to obtain correct spelling, require pupils to print or write, from your dictation, the words found at the beginning of each reading lesson.

$$\underline{a} = \check{o}$$

Explain that one dot under **a** makes it an equivalent of **o** short.

Contrast words in which **a** is *not* preceded by **w** with words of the same families in which **a** is preceded by **w**. As, **dash, wash; catch, watch; hat, what; had, squad;** and show that when preceded by **w** (or the sound of **w**), **a** in a short family becomes an equivalent of **o** short.

**NOTE.**—A preceding **w** does not change the sound of **a** when that vowel is followed by a palatal sound (**k, g, n**); as, **wag, wax, whack, quack, swang**; nor in the word **swam**.

The teacher should point to the letters as pupils sing the following to the air, "Hold the Fort":

Kitty has been up to mischief,  
 "A, o, a," I say;  
 See her paws, like velvet cushions,  
 Roll my ball away.

**Chorus**—Now she jumps upon the table.  
 (I shall have to frown.)  
 "A, a, o!" You naughty Kitty,  
 I must lift you down.

---

### A TALK ABOUT U SHORT.

Place the tip of the little finger between the teeth and sound, alternately, all the short vowels (**a, e, i, o, u**), thus leading pupils to realize that the teeth part more in the sounding of some vowels than of others. Make scales of **o** and **u** short and sing; first up and down, afterward alternately. Also make scales of **u, a** and **e** short, and sing; after which present a letter-song and sing, from left to right, to the air of "Yankee Doodle," the teacher marking each letter before the pupils sing:

A a a a a a a;  
 E e e e e e;  
 I i i i i i i  
 O o o o o o.

**Chorus**—A e i o u and y;  
 E i o a u y;  
 O a i e y and u  
 I e o a i y.

Review the principle given for **e, i** and **o**, and show that it applies to **u**.

## TABLE OF REFERENCE (FOR WORD-BUILDING).

Take **ut** with **b, c, r, n, and sh.**

- " up " c, p and s.
- " ug " b, d, m, p, r, and sn.
- " uck " d, l, s, t, ch, cl and st.
- " ung " h, s, sl, cl, fl, and spr.
- " unk " b, p, s, and sl.
- " ump " b, h, j, l, p, st, cl and pl.
- " uff " b, m, p, st, and bl.

After pronouncing these words from the slates, add **s** where name-words can be made and pronounce the second time Under-score name-words. (Spellers, pages 44, 45 and 46.)

**ō=ū**

Make scales and sing. Tell pupils that this (**o**) vowel does not always say **ō**. In some words it talks just as **u** short does. When we find such a word, we must mark **o** with one dot over it. We may think of this vowel as of a little boy blowing soap bubbles. One is sailing away, and he says to the consonants on either side of him, "Take care! Don't put it out."

Sing (*Air—“Hold the Fort”*):

Little **ō**, with pipe and soap-suds  
Running out to play;  
Now he blows a shining bubble.  
See! It sails away.

**Chorus—ō, ó, ó!** Please do not touch it.  
If it sail till noon,  
It may reach the little children  
Playing in the moon.

As words in which **ō** are found look like words of the **o** short family, their *meaning* must determine their marking. The words **sun** and **son** both belong to the same family. If pupils are led to understand that the word with **u** short means what gives us light, and the word with **o** means a boy or a man, they will always know which to use when they learn to write these words. Make scales of

**sun=son;** over the first, sketch the sun; over the second, a boy. Point to each alternately, as pupils sing.

Show, further, that this vowel says **ó** in some words ending in **e**; as, **come, some, done, dove, love, shove.** Print the words upon the board and mark in the presence of pupils. Pupils may print, repeatedly, and mark these words for the purpose of fixing them in the memory, after which turn to the Spellers and mark similar words (page 47).

Present the following sentences for marking: "Ned Black has six doves;" "Come, son, the sun is up."

#### **e = wū**

Present the words **one** and **once**, and show that **o** is equal to the combined sounds of the consonant and vowel **wū**. Prove this. Show that **e** final is always silent when the word contains another vowel. Show the words **one** and **won** to be equivalents. Make scales and sing. Also make scales of **1—one.** Pupils may repeat, with teacher;—"I have one head, one neck, one nose, one mouth, one tongue; and one thumb on each hand." Pupils may underscore number-words for emphasis when found in their reading lessons.

#### ACTION-WORDS.

Give a Language lesson upon action-words. Require pupils, in turn, to do something. Mary may step forward. John may sit down. Ned may clap his hands. As each action is performed, print the verb upon the board; as, **step, sit, clap**, etc. Add **s** to these words and print a name-word in front. Select name-words with short vowels; as, Ann steps; Nat sits; Sam claps. Show that **x** equals **cks** by presenting such words as the following: **ax, sex, vex, fix, mix, ox, flax.** (Spellers, page 48.)

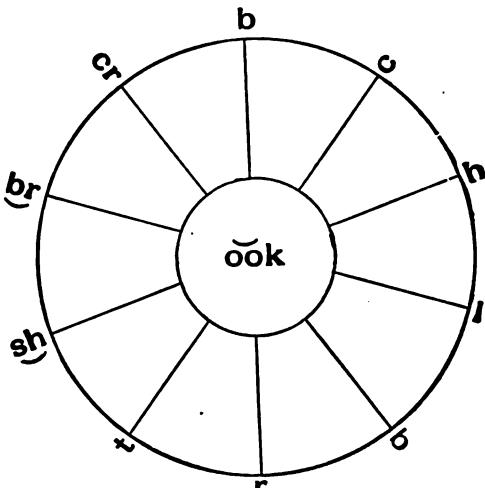
#### **oo (SHORT).**

Talk about words in which two **o**'s are found. Show, by comparative scales, that the breve over **oo** indicates that these two **o**'s

have as short a sound as single o short, as in book. Pupils may sing up on o short and down on oo short; up on oo short and down on o short; then up and down alternately, the teacher pointing to each, in turn. Call attention to the change in the position of teeth and lips as the pupils sing.

Make a scale of ook and say: "Whenever we find these twin o's standing up in front of little k, we must think of both as wearing one breve cap and saying oo. These two o's are always found together; therefore, one cap serves for both. We must remember, too, that they both *speak at the same time* and say oo when found close to little k."

As they wear a breve cap we know they belong to a Mr. Short's family, but not to the same family in which we found o short. We must think of this as of another family; the one in which the short twins are found.



$$\text{o} = \text{u} = \text{oo}.$$

Present the family of ook on the Rotary, after which pupils may make wheels composed of as many spokes as can be made from b, c, h, l, t, sh, br and cr. When they are led to understand clearly that words with ook have oo short, present the equivalents.

Print upon the board  $\text{o} = \text{u} = \text{oo}$ . Say: "Here are two vowels,

little **o** and little **u**, who sometimes say **oo**. We can not show this by putting their cap on, because that would make them say **ō** and **ū**. As they like to play foot-ball with the twins we will just make a picture of a ball under each and this will remind us of the sound. Sometimes little **u** says **u** when she plays with **puss**. Mamma says: 'Do not pull her tail but put milk in her saucer.' Often little **o** plays with two deaf mutes. He is kind to them, and these letter-children are very happy together. So, when we find them in these three words, we must say, 'Silent, silent, **o**' and then pronounce the word; as, **would**, **could**, **should**."

Pupils may copy these three words, each eight times, after which mark out the letters **l** and **u** and place a dot under the first vowel. Select a familiar air of  $\frac{3}{4}$  time, and sing from left to right, and from right to left, marking each **oo** short and a dot under each **o** and **u**, before singing:

oo o u  
oo o u  
oo o u

Also, sing the following stanzas, the teacher pointing to the vowels as reference is made to them—air, "Yankee Doodle":—

Here are the vowels **o** and **u**  
Out playing with twin brothers;  
They always like to play with these,  
And not with any others.

**Chorus**—"O, o, u!" they gladly cry;  
"This is fun worth trying."  
"OO, oo, oo!" the twins reply,  
As the ball keeps flying.

Present the following words for drill, after which copy sentences and call pupils up to mark the words:

book	could	put
cook	would	pull
hook	should	puss
look	could	push
took	would	bush
crook	should	full

Here we find the words **put**, **pull**, **puss**, **push**, **bush**, **full**, which did not belong to the **u** short family. As the terminations **ut**, **ull**, **uss**, and **ush** may be pronounced in two ways, pupils should mark and sound these words repeatedly. The following sentences will afford practice:

“**Hush**, Nell, **puss** has a rat.”

“Did you see **puss** catch the rat?”

“Can you **pull** my sled?”

“I **should** think I **could**, if you **would** let me.”

(Pupils may point out the words in which the little deaf mutes are found.)

“Fill the plate **full** of nuts.”

“**Put** the nuts on the stand.”

“**Cut** the cake and we shall take lunch.”

“**Tut, tut!** You must not drop nuts on the rug.”

Follow this drill with similar words in the Spellers (page 49) and with the adapted Reading lesson.

In the word **to**, when unemphatic (*to live, to the bank, etc.*) **o** is equivalent to **oo short**.

---

#### PROPER DIPHTHONGS.

When two vowels are found together and both are sounded, they form a proper diphthong. There are four proper diphthongs. The first two, **ow** and **ou**, do not always speak together. But when we tie them they speak together and they both say **ow!** as though they did not like it. The last two, **oy** and **oi**, always speak together. They do not mind being tied. They both say **oi!** as though it pleased them.

---

## DIPHTHONG CHILDREN.

(*Air—“Comin' through the Rye.”*)

**Ow** and **ou**, two diphthong children  
 Always getting hurt;  
 Stumbling often, cutting fingers,  
 Falling in the dirt.

*Chorus:*—**Oy** and **oi**, their little sisters,  
 Careful when they run;  
 But just as fond of play as **ow**, **ou**—  
 Just as fond of fun.

Prove by the movement of the lips that both vowels are sounded. **Ow** draws the rounded lips together; **oi** throws them apart. (Remind pupils that when we sing the scales of single short vowels our lips do not move.) Lead pupils to see that, in both instances, **w** and **y** are vowels because they are equivalents of other vowel sounds. In **ow**, the **w** equals **oo**; in **oy**, the **y** equals **i** short.

Make a Letter Song, tying all the diphthongs before you sing. Point, as pupils sing to the air of “Yankee Doodle”:

Ow ow ow ow ow ow;  
 Oy oy oy oy oy oy;  
 Ou ou ou ou ou ou;  
 Oi oi oi oi oi oi.

Call special attention to the movements of the lips as these diphthongs are sung.

## TABLE OF REFERENCE (PROPER DIPHTHONGS).

Present words with **ow** upon the Rotary. Call pupils' attention to the large number of word-children found in the family of Mr. **Ow**. Place the table of reference upon the board and desire that columns of words be formed. These words must be marked and pronounced, after which desire that the name-words be underscored and emphasized. And lastly, add **s** to the name-words and pronounce them a third time. Sing the last stanza of "The Crooked Mark" as you place the suspended bar under each **s**.

Take **ow** with **b, c, h, m, n, r, s, pl and br.**

" owl " **c, f, h, gr, pr and sc.**

" out " **p, r, sc, st, sh, tr and sp.**

" oy " **b, R, t and fl.**

" oil " **b, c, f, s, t, sp and br.**

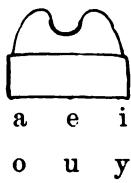
As in previous lessons, follow this drill with the marking of similar words in Spellers (pages 50 and 51) and afterward with the Reading lesson adapted to the new sounds.

The vowels **ow** and **ou** are not always proper diphthongs, but at present it is enough to tell pupils to tie these vowels and sound them with one impulse of the voice. In this connection tell pupils that **w** is a consonant when it precedes a vowel, but a vowel when it follows a vowel (as, **was, cow**); that **y** is a consonant only when it begins a word or syllable, and that in all other positions it obeys the rules governing the vowel **i** (as, **yes, boy**). Prolong the sounds of **w** and **y** when you pronounce these words: **well, west, went, wish, wick, wink, width, yes, yet, yell, yelk.**

## THE SHORT FAMILY.

Print neatly with colored crayon scales of the short vowels. Present y as an equivalent of i. Leave these scales upon the board. Call the roll of the vowels to see if all are present. As the teacher says "*a short*" (pointing to the vowel), have pupils answer "*ă*," etc. Use the term "breve."

Teach the following rhymes and sing occasionally to the tune "Wait for the Wagon," page 238, pointing to the letters on the blackboard as their sounds are sung:



Here are the five breve-vowels:  
 A short, "*ă, ă*," must say;  
 E short, "*ĕ, ĕ*," remember;  
 I short, "*ĭ, ĭ*," (this way);  
 O short says "*ŏ, ŏ*," quickly;  
 U short, "*û, û*," quickly too;  
 While *y* (the little baby)  
 Says "*ĭ, I sound like you.*"

These sounds may also be used in a "Window Song" to the tune of "Thumbkins," page 227.

Review the phonic principles which have been given for the short vowels, and show that the distinctive feature of a "short family" is one vowel followed by one or more consonants. Illustrate this by presenting a variety of words from the families which have been introduced up to this point. As,

at	bed	it	myth	log	up
sack	mend	fling	lynx	drop	buds
drags	spells	twists	lynch	romps	swung
scratch	strength	splints	crypt	strong	stumps

Remind pupils, however, that there are exceptions, as, *son*, *puss*, *pull*, in some of the short families, and that there are *families* of words in which the vowel is *not* short, though it is the only vowel of the word and is followed by one or more consonants. A preceding *w* (as they have already learned) changes the sound of *a*, and a following *r* changes the sound of *any* vowel. Then there are combinations of consonants, not including *r* (*ll*, *ld*, *nt*, *ff*, etc.) which change or modify the short sounds of certain vowels, and in words of such classifications, though there is only one vowel in the word, it is *not* short.

NOTE.—See table of "Vowel Markings" and Explanation, page 100. Observe the classifications which are indicated by a double underscore. Of the 142 classifications, there are only 20 in which the vowels are *not*, as a rule, short. Instructions are duly given for teaching these as they are reached in the regular order of presenting the different classifications.

When pupils are asked why the vowel in a word is short, if the vowel is not *a* the answer should be: "Because there is but one vowel in the word and it is not followed by *r*," but if the vowel is *a*, they should reply: "Because there is but one vowel in the word and it is not followed by *r* nor preceded by *w*."

## THE LONG FAMILY.

Call the roll of the short vowels and tell pupils that they are called "short" because of the abrupt manner in which we "clip" their sounds. This clipping is occasioned by the consonant ending which always follows such vowels.

Place the vowels upon the board without the breve caps

a e i o u y

and refer to their letter names, which are identical with what we call their

LONG SOUNDS (*i.e.*, uninterrupted).

ā ē ī ō ū ū (long).

As the names and sounds of these vowels are identical, they may all be presented at the same time. The long sound of a vowel is indicated by a straight line placed over it. This line is called a macron. Pupils may sound with the teacher as the macron is placed over each vowel. Tell pupils that "these vowels speak their own names." Contrast the short and long sounds, as follows :

ă, ā; ē, ē; ī (ŷ), ī (ŷ); ō, ō; ū, ū.

To the right of the scales of the short vowels make scales of the long vowels, and drill pupils upon the sounds. A pleasing exercise may be introduced by singing, alternately, the short and long sounds of each vowel, to the scale. Leave these scales of the long and short vowels on the board for daily singing exercises. Pupils will see that these are the same vowels they have been using in the "short families," but that their sounds are different. Explain that they can only be distinguished by the hats they wear. The short vowels wear the breve (cap) while the long vowels wear the macron (hat). Sing occasionally the following rhymes, to the tune of "Yankee Doodle":



a e i  
o u y

These vowels six wear macron hats;

They have not any other.

Old Mr. Long is their papa,

And Mrs. Long their mother

*Chorus:—Ā, ē, ī, ō, ū, and ū;*

Here we wish to show them.

They must wear their macron hats,

Until we learn to know them.

These sounds may also be sung to the tune of "Thumkins," page 227.

Refer to "Vowel Markings," page 100, first group of families (a single vowel followed by a single consonant) and show pupils the change made in a family of this class by putting a vowel (e) after the consonant. Also show like changes in words built from these families. Thus :

am	an	ap	at	ad
ame	ane	ape	ate	ade
Sam	can	cap	hat	mad
same	cane	cape	hate	made

<b>im</b>	<b>in</b>	<b>ip</b>	<b>it</b>	<b>id</b>
<b>ime</b>	<b>ine</b>	<b>ipe</b>	<b>ite</b>	<b>ide</b>
<b>dim</b>	<b>fin</b>	<b>rip</b>	<b>bit</b>	<b>hid</b>
<b>dime</b>	<b>fine</b>	<b>ripe</b>	<b>bite</b>	<b>hide</b>

In like manner develop and contrast families and words from the other families of this group which are capable of such development, omitting the families in which the consonant is *g*.

Then show the change made by placing another vowel just before the consonant. Thus :

<b>aim</b>	<b>ain</b>	<b>ait</b>	<b>aid</b>	<b>ail</b>
<b>eem</b>	<b>een</b>	<b>eet</b>	<b>eed</b>	<b>eel</b>
<b>eam</b>	<b>ean</b>	<b>eat</b>	<b>ead</b>	<b>eal</b>
<b>oam</b>	<b>oan</b>	<b>uit</b>	<b>oad</b>	<b>oal</b>

and form words from them. Also place on the board the digraphs

**ay ee oe ue**

and build from them such words as *day*, *see*, *hoe*, *blue*, etc.

As each family or word is presented and marked, ask pupils how many vowels it contains. Show them that in each family or word which contains but *one* vowel, the vowel is *short*, but in all the combinations which contain *two* vowels, the right-hand vowel is silent, and the other vowel is *long*.

Lead them to see that the distinctive feature of a "long family" is *two vowels*. Direct their attention particularly to the fact that if the vowels are separated it is a *single consonant* which intervenes, and deduce this general phonic principle :

*When there are two vowels in a word, either separated by a single consonant or found together, the right-hand vowel is silent and the other vowel is long.*

NOTE.—In the "long families," *a* is not modified by a preceding *w*; as, *ware*. A following *r* always modifies the sound of *a* (*long*); as, *hare*, *hair*, and in a few words, *r* changes the sound of *e* (*long*); as, *there*, *their*, but it does not change the sounds of the other vowels (*long*); as, *hire*, *hore*, *cure*, *lyre*.

Exceptional words will be found in some of the "long families," and besides the **diphthong** and **oo** short families, there are a few families (**oo long**, **ew**, **eigh**, **ie**, etc.) to which, though two vowels are found together, this principle does not apply.

As their respective classifications are reached in the regular order, instructions will be given for teaching words in which the only vowel is the final letter; as, *he*, *no*, *my*, etc.; and words having the usual conformation of the "short families," but in which the vowel is long; as, *kind*, *mild*, *cold*. Also, words in which there are *two vowels with two consonants intervening*.

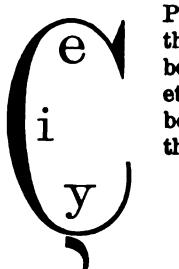
Ask pupils if they can name any families of words (**diphthongs** and **oo short**) which, though they contain two vowels, are not governed by this principle. Present a few such words as *book*, *look* *took*, and *down*, *loud*, *boll*, *boy*, and remind pupils that in these, although two vowels are found together, we do not mark one silent, because both the vowels speak.

Review the exceptions (*have, live, gone, love, said, been, etc.*) which the pupils have been taught, and preserve a list of such words on the board for reference. Show that while these words *look* like words of the Long family, they *talk* like words of the Short family. Call them "runaways." For example, tell pupils that *been* ran away from the family of Mr. E Long and joined the family of Mr. I Short. After marking such a word, they should enclose it in a circle to show that it is a runaway.

As pupils are marking the long-vowel words, ask them frequently for their reasons for marking the vowels; as, "Why did you mark *e* silent and *a* long?" etc. With a word like *home*, the answer should be: "Because when there are two vowels in a word, separated by a single consonant, the right-hand vowel is silent and the other vowel is long." With a word like *maid*, the answer should be: "Because when two vowels are found together in a word, the right-hand vowel is silent and the other vowel is long."

#### C SOFT AND G SOFT.

Explain to pupils that *e* sometimes has the sound of *s* (unmarked), and that this sound is indicated by a mark called a "cedilla," which is placed under the letter.



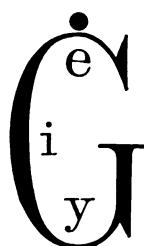
Place *ç = s* on the board eight times and require pupils to properly mark the *c*. Contrast the sound of *c* hard and *c* soft. Show that *c* is soft before *e, i* and *y*, by presenting such words as *cell, cent, face, mice, cite*, etc. Uncover the stencil picture of *c* soft (previously placed upon the board), and sing the following rhymes to the air given on page 235. In these rhymes, use the names of the vowels.

Finding a *C* in front of an *e,*  
In front of an *i*, in front of a *y,*  
Standing in front of *e, i*, or *y,*  
We mark and sound it "*ç, ç.*"

Explain to pupils that *g* sometimes has the sound of *j*, and that this sound is indicated by a dot placed above the letter. Place *ǵ = j* upon the board eight times, and require pupils to properly mark the *g*. Contrast the sounds of *g* hard and *g* soft. Show that *g* is soft before *e, i* and *y*, by presenting such words as *page, rage, cage, gem, gin, gyp*, etc. Uncover the stencil picture of *g* soft (previously placed upon the board), and sing the following rhymes to the air given on page 235.

In these rhymes, use the names of the vowels.

Finding a *g* in front of an *e,*  
In front of an *i*, in front of a *y,*  
Standing in front of *e, i*, or *y,*  
We mark and sound it "*ǵ, ǵ.*"



Develop the following as a phonic principle:

*C and g are soft when followed by e, i, or y.*

**Note.**—*C* and *g* are found before *i* and *y* in very few monosyllables, but the knowledge that these consonants are soft before those vowels will be helpful to pupils when longer words are introduced.

## A LONG.

Review the phonic principle for marking long vowels. Introduce the following as words of the "long family," calling up one pupil to mark while the others sound.

bake	save	face	race	age	cage	wade
cake	shave	lace	grace	rage	page	wave
lake	brave	pace	trace	stage	sage	wake

Call attention to the fact that in these words there is only *one consonant* between the two vowels and that it is *not r*.

Show from the words of the last column that **w** does *not* affect the sound of a long.

NOTE.—Observe order of "Marking and Sounding." See page 24, § 4, and the table, page 26. In marking and sounding the word **face** the pupil should say "**sil**ent," "**é**," "**ág**e," "**fá**ce."

## TABLE OF REFERENCE.

For word-building in the "long families," present this table :

Take <b>ame</b> with <b>c, d, f, g, l, n, s, t, sh, bl</b> and <b>fl</b> .
" <b>ade</b> " <b>f, m, w, bl, sh, sp, gl</b> and <b>gr</b> .
" <b>ane</b> " <b>b, f, l, m, p</b> and <b>pl</b> .
" <b>ape</b> " <b>c, t, sh, gr, dr</b> and <b>cr</b> .
" <b>ale</b> " <b>b, h, m, p, s</b> and <b>g</b> .

Let the marking of page 52 of the Speller follow this board drill. Pupils should underscore name-words and adjectives, and should also copy ten name-words (*not* ending in **ce** or **ge**) and form their plurals by adding **s**. After marking and sounding the words in the Speller until they are familiar, read corresponding lesson in Primer or Reader. Connect language lesson with every reading lesson.

## E LONG.

Show how slightly the teeth are parted in sounding this vowel. Make scales of **e** long. Call the attention of pupils to the position of the teeth and lips as they sing. Point to the "Long Family" and sing up on **a** (long) and down on **é** (long), and then sing alternately, **á, é**, up and down.

Place here upon the board, and show pupils that the sound of the vowel glides into the sound of the following **r**; hence, whenever a vowel is followed by **r** it must be tied to the **r** to show that these letters speak together. In such words we must first mark the vowel, and then as we tie it to the **r** we must sound the vowel and consonant together, letting the sound of the former glide into that of the latter. Let us remember this in the families of **ire, ore** and **ure**. (For order of marking and sounding glide vowels, see §§ 5 and 6, page 24.)

Review the phonic principle for long vowels and illustrate it with such words as **here, sere, mere, see, bee, three, beet, meet, etc.**

Build families of words from eed, eel, eet, eep, using both single consonants and keys for this purpose.

Review the phonic principle governing short vowels, and remind pupils that a short vowel is always followed by one or more consonants, which has the effect of shortening the sound of the vowel. Then present the following words, and show that the vowel is long because there is no following consonant to shorten the sound; hence, when the only vowel of a word is its final letter, it is long.

he	be	no	my	try
me	we	go	by	I (pronoun)
she	ye	so	cry	O (interjection)

Follow this drill by the marking of words in Speller (pages 53 and 54), after which the corresponding reading lessons may be given.

#### I (LONG) AND I.

Show that i long is the third of the long vowels; that its sound opens the mouth wider than a or e; that there is more movement of the lower jaw in sounding this than for a or e. Pupils will realize this by holding their chins with thumb and fore-finger as they sing.

Make scales of i (long). Show that the pronoun I is always long.

#### PRONOUNS.

Here give a language lesson on pronouns. Show that this large letter, when alone, always stands for the name of the person speaking. The teacher, placing a hand upon the head of each pupil, in turn, may ask, "Who is here?" and thus elicit the answers, "I, Mary, am here," or, "I, John," etc. Build up words with consonants and keys from ine, ipe, ide, ine, ile, ire and ife. Keep up the interest by presenting all these families on the Rotary. Review words with and, end and ind. As,

and	end	ind
band	bend	bind
hand	send	find
land	lend	wind

Show by the above words, that, while final nd makes a and e short, as a rule it makes i long. Show the word wind to be an exception. (Speller, pages 55 and 56.)

#### O (LONG).

Insert the point of the little finger between the lips as the scale of o long is sung. Pupils may thus be made conscious of the position of their lips in the production of this sound. Build up words with consonants and keys, from ope, one, one, and oes. Show that name-words ending in oes mean more than one; that s = z in such words; that, in the plurals of nouns or the singular of action-words, the addition of s, as a rule, makes no difference in the marking and sounding of the preceding letters; that e is silent and the first vowel long.

Sing the third stanza of "The Crooked Mark," as pupils place the suspended bar under each final **s** in the following words: **hoes**, **goes**, **foes**, **toes**.

Show these two words to be exceptions; **shoes** and **does**. Do not show pupils how to mark these exceptions until their families are introduced.

### ōll AND ōll.

Show that words in **oll** can be marked in two ways; we must, therefore, distinguish these by their meaning; as, **poll**, **loll**, **doll**, and **roll**, **toll**. Illustrate these words by printing sentences on the board: "Ned rolls his 

(Pupils may mark the words and read the picture); "Fred met Poll;" "The doll has a red dress on."

Pupils may copy, mark and read the above sentences. Try the three **oll** words before you mark them.

Make scales of **ōk=ō**. Show that **o** is always long when it is an interjection. Give a Language lesson. Show how different is our exclamation for pleasure from the quick sharp **Ol** that pain wrings from us. The teacher may illustrate this by reading the following sentences:

"O, how beautiful is the sunset!"

"O, how sweet that music!"

"O, how we love obedient children!"

"O, how the lightning flashes!"

"O, what a storm!"

"O, I have cut my hand!"

Show that the sound, in the first three sentences, must be prolonged—drawn out in pleasing tones; that in the last three, this vowel must be spoken in a short, abrupt way; that this interjection must be an exponent of our feelings. Call attention to the fact, that, in all the words of the Long family which have been presented,

we have found but one consonant between the two vowels of the word. When this is the case, we may mark the first vowel long, with a much greater degree of certainty than if we found the vowels separated by two consonants, as in the words **horse**, **mince**, **singe**. It is true that the word **strange** obeys the rule of the Long family, although, in it, the vowels are separated by two consonants; but pupils will soon learn, through the experience gained by marking words, that more exceptions are to be found with **a** than with any other vowel.

### ū (LONG).

Point to the scale of this vowel in the Long family, on the board, and sing up and down. Call attention to the position of the organs of speech upon emission of this sound. Show that both tongue and lips assist in producing it; that it is a *double sound*. Pupils may be led to understand this by desiring them to say rapidly "yōō, yōō. yōō."

In building up words of the **u** long family, tell pupils they may choose any consonant or any key to precede the family name except **r**, **ch** or **y**. These must be avoided because they change the sound of **u** long; the words in which they are found belong to another family, so we must remember, when we find words beginning with **ru**, **chu** or **yu** and ending with **e**, that we must mark the final vowel silent, but must not mark the **u** long.

Present, on the board, the following

#### TABLE OF REFERENCE

from which pupils may form words:

Take **ume** with **f** and **fl**.

" **ute**    " **c, l, m** and **fl**.

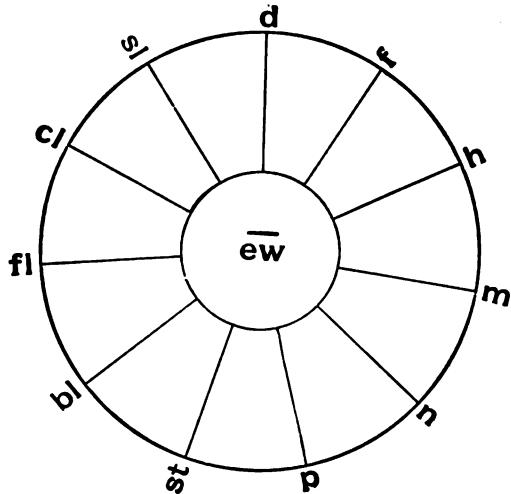
" **use**    " **f and m**.

In connection with these lessons give special drill upon the words beginning with **d**, **t** and **s**, as such words are often incorrectly spoken; as, **dupe**, **lute**, **duke**, **tune**, and **sue**.

$$\overline{ew} = \bar{u}$$

Present the known sound first. Make scales of  $\overline{ew} = \bar{u}$ , and sing up and down. When we wish to show that these vowels have the sound of **u** long we extend the line over both letters. We must never try to separate the sounds of these vowels, but must consider them as *one vowel*. As they are not always equivalent to **u** long, we must show *when* to draw the line over. Show pupils, by illustrations of words, that when these vowels (**ew**) follow any consonant except **r** or **y**, or any key except **ch**, we may place the line over and give them the **u** long sound. As, **few, hew, mew, new, pew, stew.**

Present words of the **ew** family on the Rotary. Pupils may draw wheels with thirteen spokes and place at each point **d, f, h, m, n, st, fl, st** and **cl**; after which form a column of words of the **ew** family (Spellers, pages 59 and 60.)



### $\overline{\text{oo}}$ (LONG).

Make scales, side by side, of **o** long and **oo** long. Show how the sound of the latter draws the rounded lips together. They do not move, as in **u** long; but it takes as long to sound **oo** long as **o** long. We may, therefore, say that words with double **o** long belong to

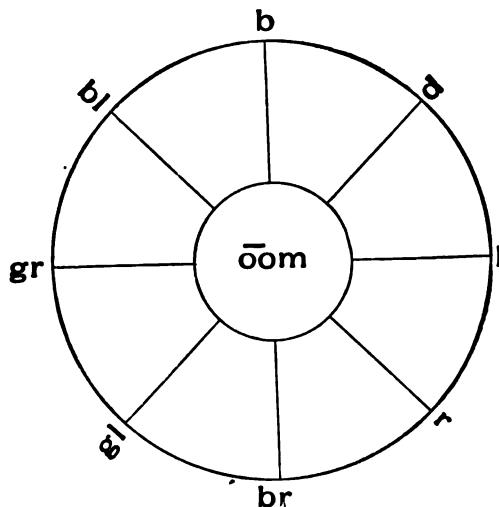
another Long family; the family in which the *twins* are found. We say such words belong to a Long family, because of the long macron hat the vowels wear. Like other twin o's, one hat is enough for both, for these twins are always found together. When we find words in which the two o's are not followed by k, we may think, as we draw a straight line over (put on a macron hat), that they say **ōo**. This **ōo!** is the twins' "Hurrah!" It is such fun for them to run out to play! Present the families of **ool**, **oom**, **oon**, **oop**, **oor**, and show by the final consonants, or rather by the absence of k, that these vowels must be marked long. Sing the song of **U** and **u** (Page 236).

## TABLE OF REFERENCE.

Give this table for word-building:

Take **ool** with **c, f, p, t, sp** and **st**.

- " **oom** " **b, d, l, r, br, bl** and **gl**.
- " **oon** " **b, m, n, s, cr** and **sp**.
- " **oop** " **c, h, tr** and **dr**.
- " **oor** " **b** and **p**.
- " **oot** " **b, h, r, t** and **sh**.



There are a few words that end in **ood** and **oot**, and some that begin with **woo**, in which the twin o's say **oo**. These we must learn by marking frequently, after which we shall know that **oo** before final **k** is short and before other consonants, long. Let us try to think that when **l**, **m**, **n**, **t** or **r** follows the twins, they draw on their macron hat and say **oo!** as they go out to skate.

**o = u = ou = ew = oo**

You remember that **o** and **u** said **oo** when they played football, but when they run out in the cold they say **oo**. They put on their skates and run out with the Long twins. Make scales of all the skating vowels and mark before singing. Sing up and down, pointing to each letter as pupils run the scales. Also sing this sound to the air of "Greenville." Lead pupils to note the difference between this and the sound of **u** long. In sounding **u** long the lips move constantly, but in sounding **oo** long they retain the same position. Make scales and sing alternately **u** long, **oo** long. Give repeated reviews upon the sound of **oo** long. Point to the vowels as the following rhymes are sung to the air of "Hold the Fort."

**oo ! oo ! oo !** 'Twas wintry weather,  
But a sunny day,  
When the twins of Mr. O Long  
Started out to play.

*Chorus* :—Soon they met four other vowels,  
Skating on the ice :  
**"o ! u ! ew !"** They bowed, and added,  
"Is not skating nice?"

In the word **to**, when unemphatic (*to live, to the bank, etc.*), **o** is equivalent to **oo** short; but when **to** is emphatic (*to and fro, to and from, etc.*) **o** is equivalent to **oo** long.

The teacher should first mark the following words in the presence of pupils, and then call upon them to mark the same words

repeatedly, until both the pronunciation and the spelling become familiar. Explain that in **two**, **w** is silent.

<b>no</b>	<b>o</b>	<b>o</b>
<b>go</b>	<b>do</b>	<b>move</b>
<b>so</b>	<b>to (emphatic)</b>	<b>lose</b>
<b>fro</b>	<b>two</b>	<b>prove</b>

Show that when preceded by **y**, **ou** equals **oo** long. As, **you**, **your**, **youth**. Point out the **y**, which will aid pupils in determining how to mark **ou**. Before they mark **ou** they may glance forward, and if they see **y** they should not tie the vowels, but mark **u** silent and place two dots under **o**.

In the words **who**, **whose**, **whom**, **o** equals **oo** long.

In connection with this lesson show that, as a rule, when **wh** is found in front of any vowel except **o**, they may tie these consonants and "blow out the light," but when found in front of **o**, **w** does not like it. It does not speak, and must be marked silent. As, **who**, **whom**.

For further practice in the pronunciation and use of such words, give them such sentences as the following: "Do you go to school?" "Yes, I do; do you?" "My new shoes pinch my toes." "Can you count two?" "Yes, I can; and mark it, too." "Tell me what to do."

Review instruction on **u** long and **ew=u** long, pages 73 and 74, and present the following words:

<b>rule</b>	<b>truce</b>	<b>chute</b>	<b>drew</b>	<b>screw</b>	<b>chew</b>
<b>ruse</b>	<b>yule</b>	<b>sure</b>	<b>grew</b>	<b>threw</b>	<b>yew</b>

Show that when **u** long (or its equivalent **ew**) is preceded by **r**, **ch** or **y**, it becomes an equivalent of **oo** long. This sound is indicated by two dots placed beneath the letters, as shown in caption, page 76. Follow this by the marking of Speller pages 61 and 62. Read corresponding lesson in Primer or Reader.

NOTE.—In its respelling of such words, the International Dictionary gives **ül** for the pronunciation of **yule**, **ü** for **yew** and **you**, etc.; but as **y** is a consonant in these words, and as **yoo=ü**, we prefer to mark such words as follows: **yül**, **yew**, **yoü**. In **sure**, **s** has the sound of **sh**, which changes **ü** long to **oo** long.

**K, G, W AND U SILENT.**

Present columns of words beginning with **kn**, **gn**, **wr**, and **gu**. Show that the first letters of the first three are silent, and that in the "gu words," the **u** is silent. As it is by frequent marking of the letters that pupils are reminded they are always found in certain positions, repeat these drills daily, until the impression is made. Later, when asked to write these words, memory recalls the fact that **k** and **g** before **n**, and **w** before **r** were always found there ready for the line to be drawn through. When words are presented for the purpose of impressing a certain point, be sure to require not only this, but the marking of all the letters that have been explained in previous lessons:

<b>knee</b>	<b>gnat</b>	<b>wring</b>	<b>guest</b>	<b>buy</b>
<b>knife</b>	<b>gnash</b>	<b>wrong</b>	<b>guide</b>	<b>build</b>
<b>know</b>	<b>gnaw</b>	<b>wrench</b>	<b>guile</b>	<b>build</b>
<b>qu.</b>				

Present words beginning with **qu**. Show that **q=k** and **u=w**. When **u=w** we consider it a consonant; therefore we must *tie qu*, for the key of the word. Call pupils up to mark **quest**, **quell**, **quit**, **quick**, **quite**, **quote**, **quench**. Follow these drills with the marking of words found on pages 63 and 64 of Spellers.

Mark the name-words, and tell or show the meaning of the action-words. Ask which word shows the most action. Illustrate **wrench** and **wring** with the hands. Show the objects for which two name-words stand, viz.;—a **knife** and your **knee**. Also, refer to words beginning with **gu** and **bu**, followed by another vowel. Show that these do not follow the rule; as, in such cases, the first vowel, **u**, is always marked silent.

## THE D AND ED WORDS.

Show pupils that when we find **ed** added to words which end in **d** or **t**, we mark the **e** preceding final **d** short; as, **rented**. Present the following words, and show in each instance why **e** must be marked short: **printed, needed, hooded, routed, raided**.

When we find **ed** added to words which end in any consonant except **d** or **t**, we mark the **e** in final **ed** silent; as, **taxed, pressed, hissed**. Present the following words for marking, showing that **e** is silent in each case because **ed** does not follow either **t** or **d**: **tacked, lashed, matched, decked, mashed, etched, picked, threshed, notched, locked, fished, ditched, tucked, hushed, lunched**.

In the words following, conceal final **d** and thus present them as words of the Long family; pupils will then see why **e** final is marked silent and the first vowel long: **lamed, laced, paged, tamed, cased, lined, timed, spiced, tired, robed, dosed, cured**. Show, also, by referring to these words, that, when **ed** follows any whisper-consonant (except **t**) or any whisper-key, **d** final is equal to **t**. Therefore, cross it thus: —**d**, as in **tacked**.

Lead pupils to suggest other words ending in **ed**. Ask "Who can give me a word ending in **ped**?" If one pupil answers "**shaped**," print it upon the board and ask for another word; after which cross the final **d**'s, because they follow whisper-consonants. Show that the word **wretched** is an exception, as all other words ending in **tched** have **e** silent.

ACTION WORDS IN **d** AND **ed**.

Talk about action-words. Ask each pupil in turn to do something, and to express the action by the use of the pronoun **I**. Henry may say, "I move my feet," as he steps forward. John may say, with accompanying gesture, "I raise my hand;" Mary, "I touch my cheek." Lead pupils to make statements as the actions are performed; after

which, show how the addition of **d** or **ed** changes the time. Add **d** to **move** and **wave**, and **ed** to **touch**, and ask that the sentences be repeated: "I moved my feet;" "I waved my hand;" "I touched my cheek." Show that these refer to past time. (Ask if we must mark **e** short, or silent, in **moved** and **waved**.)

Pupils may think of **d** and by a word to tell of something. When they find a word look in front of these letters they must mark the **e** short; **ed**, **hinted**. (Call attention to the fact that we speak twice in pronouncing **twice**) But if they find **ed** preceded by any other consonant, then they may mark the **e** silent; as, **hatched**, **flashed**.

Refer to the meanings of these words and show that they indicate actions performed: "James **dreamed**;" "George **moaned**;" "The horse **paced**;" "The lightning **flashed**." Lead pupils to understand the meaning of past time by such questions as: "When did George moan?" Answer: "He moaned last night." "When did the horse pace?" "He paced yesterday." "When did the lightning flash?" "It flashed this morning, during the storm." (Spellers, pages 65 and 66.)



**ed** as of little watches worn  
thing that has happened.  
ending in **ed** they must  
for **t** or **d**. If they find them  
as **waded**, **shaded**, **rent-**  
**tion** to the fact that we  
such words.) But if they

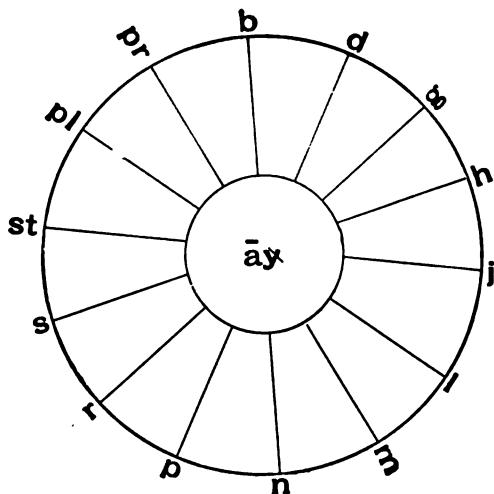
## EQUIVALENTS OF LONG VOWELS.

### EQUIVALENTS OF **a** LONG.

$$\bar{a}y = \bar{a}.$$

Make scales and sing **ay**=**a**. Show that here **y** is silent, because another vowel is found in front; and that it is a vowel

because it does not precede **a**. Explain that words with this equivalent (**ay**) belong to the family of Mr. A Long. We rarely find them in any other family. Because of this we may mark the last vowel silent and the **a** long. Print **āy** upon the inner section of the Rotary and show what a large family Mr. A Long has—all the words that can be formed with **ay**, all we have formerly marked and many more. (It interests young pupils



when they are told they may think of such words as **mate**, **came**, &c., as Mr. Long's *boys*, and of the words containing the equivalents of **a** long as his *girls*; as, **hay**, **pail**, &c.)

Pupils may build up words with **ay**, by reference to the consonants found on the outer section of the Rotary. Form other words with **keys**; as, **stay**, **clay**, &c., after which add **s** wherever a sense-word can be made. As the teacher points to a few of these words printed on the board for illustration, pupils may sing the third stanza of "The Crooked Mark," the teacher placing a suspended bar under each final **s**. Present the word **says**, inclosed in a circle, and ask if they remember in what family this word was found. Ask who can come up and mark it. Let the marking and pronouncing of words in the Spellers follow this drill. Also, copy ten name-

words, changing them into the plural number, and making final **s** an equivalent of **z**.

$$\bar{a}i = \bar{a}.$$

Show **ai** to be another equivalent of **a** long. Refer to what you have already said:—that, when two vowels are not tied underneath to indicate a blended sound, we must, as a rule, mark the right hand vowel silent.

#### TABLE OF REFERENCE.

Arrange this table for the building up of words with **a** long:

Take **ail** with **b, f, h, m, n, t, r, s, p** and **w**.

“ **ain** “ **C, f, g, l, m, p, r, v, st** and **gr**.

“ **aid** “ **l, m, p, r, st** and **br**.

Present the word **said**, and ask who can remember in what family it was found and who can come up and mark it. (Spellers, page 68.)

$$\bar{e}\bar{y} = \bar{a}.$$

Make scales and sing. Show that a line drawn under **e** makes it an equivalent of **a** long; that **y** must be silent because it follows another vowel. Present such words as **they, whey, prey**, etc., for marking. Follow this with words in which **ei—a**. Add **ei** to the scales upon the board—thus:—**ei** = **ei** = **ā**. After marking the silent vowels and placing a line under each **e**, sing these scales. Present such words as **rein** and **vein** for marking.

$$\bar{e}\bar{i}\bar{h} = \bar{e}\bar{i}\bar{g} = \bar{a}.$$

Present the word **feign** and explain its meaning. Show that it contains two silent letters; show also, that we must draw an oblique line through each letter saying “silent” each time; as, **feign**. We must never permit one mark to serve for both silent letters. In presenting the words **neigh, weigh, eight, weight**, refer to the three silent letters. As you call upon pupils to mark these words, instruct them to say “silent, silent, silent,” as the three lines are drawn through the three letters. This is to fix the spellings.

ling of the word in the mind. Do not accept such marking as the following: **neigh**. Lead pupils to learn, through the marking of such words as **weigh**, that the letters **igh** must be marked silent *when another vowel is found in front*; that when this vowel is **e** we must make it an equivalent of **a** long, as: **weigh**. Follow this drill with the marking of similar words in the Spellers, page 69.

EQUIVALENTS OF **e** LONG.

$$\bar{e}a = \bar{e}.$$

In presenting the equivalents of **e** long, follow the plan laid down for those of **a** long. Present, first, words with **ea**: prepare this table and leave it upon the board.

## TABLE OF REFERENCE.

- Take **eap** with **h, l, r, and ch.**
- “ **eat** “ **b, h, m, n, p, s and ch.**
- “ **ear** “ **f, h, n, t, sp, sh and cl.**
- “ **ead** “ **b, l, r and pl.**

In this connection show that some words in **ea** are found in the **e** short family; as, **head, thread**.

$$\bar{e}\bar{e} = \bar{e}.$$

Here give a review lesson upon words with **ee**; lead pupils to form words with **eet** by prefixing **b, f, m, gr, sh, fl, and str.**

Arrange this

## TABLE OF REFERENCE

for the building up of **ee** words:

- Take **eed** with **d, f, h, n, r, s, w, st and gr.**
- “ **eer** “ **b, d, st and ch.**
- “ **eep** “ **d, p, w, cr, sh and st.**
- “ **eel** “ **h, k, p, r, wh and st.**
- “ **een** “ **s, w, spl and qu.**

Here present the word **been**, and ask, “Who can remember the family in which we found it?” “Who can come up and mark this word?”

**I** = ē.

Present the following words to illustrate this new sound of i: **field, yield, shield.** (Such words can be marked in this way—**fēld**; but, as pupils are accustomed to marking out the right hand vowel, we prefer the former marking.) Follow this drill with the marking of the lessons. (Spellers, page 70, and the Reading lessons.)

## EQUIVALENTS OF I LONG

**Y** = **Y** = **I**.

Present equivalents of i long. Make scales of **y** = **i**. Show, by the following words, that when y is the only and final vowel of the word we mark it long; also, that in words ending in **ye** the e is silent and the y is long; as, **by, my, thy, try, dye, rye, lye.**

**I** = **I**.

Present words in **igh** and show that when i is the only vowel in the word and is followed by gh, we mark the two final consonants silent and the i long, as **high, nigh.** Present columns of words with **eigh** in contrast with those of **igh.** Show, in the former, that we mark the i silent because the word contains another vowel (the i being the right hand vowel). But in words where i is found to be the only vowel, we can not mark it silent, as every word must contain one vowel that *says something*. Mark these words alternately, in the presence of pupils, that they may learn when to mark i long and when silent: **weigh, nigh, eight, night, freight, sight.** (Spellers, page 71.)

## EQUIVALENTS OF O LONG.

**O** = **OW** = **OU** = **O** = **O** = **O**.

Present these different columns of words for marking. Lead pupils to see that where **ow** and **ou** are not tied, the right hand vowels must be marked silent: also, where these vowels (**oo**) are

marked neither by a breve nor a macron, the first **o** must be long, or an equivalent of **u** short, and the second silent:

roar	bow	four	doe	door
load	row	pour	foe	floor
road	sow	gourd	hoe	door
toad	grow	fourth	toe	floor

For word-building take **oat** with **b, c, g, fl, bl** and **thr**; also, **ow** with **b, l, t, r, s, sh, st**, and **cr**. Follow this with marking words in the Spellers, page 72, and the adapted Reading lesson.

#### TABLE OF REFERENCE.

Show, by the following table, the different sounds of **ow**, **ou**, and **oo**:

(1.)	<b>ow</b> , as cow	<b>ou</b> , as out	<b>oo</b> , as book
(2.)	<b>ōw</b> , " bow	<b>ōu</b> , " you	<b>ōo</b> , " moon
(3.)	<b>ōw</b> , " bellows	<b>ōu</b> , " would	<b>ōo</b> , " door
(4.)		<b>ōu</b> , " four	<b>ōa</b> , " blood

#### EQUIVALENTS OF **u** LONG.

$$\bar{u} = \bar{u}i = \bar{ew} = \bar{u}.$$

Present the following words for marking: **due**, **hue**, **Sue**, **Juice**, **sluice**, **dew**, **few**, **new**, **pew**. Remember, as a rule, you must mark out a vowel before you mark the first vowel of the word long. Words ending in **ew** are exceptions, for, in these, the vowels *speak together*.

Present for review words with **u** long, words in which this vowel is separated from final **e** by a consonant, as, **tube**, **fume**, **tune**, **dupe**, **muse**, **mute**. Ask pupils why we mark **u** long in these words. (Answer: first, because **e** is the final vowel, and next, because we do not find **r**, **ch** or **y** at the beginning of these words.) In presenting words with equivalents, call attention to the fact that with the exception of **ew**, one vowel must be marked silent and that, as a rule, this is the one on the right hand. Review instruction (Manual, page 77) and words on page 62 of Speller with **u** and

**ew**, referring to the change in the sound when these vowels follow **r, ch or y**. The lesson which must follow will be found on page 73 of Spellers.

Do not confuse pupils by introducing many exceptions until they have learned to recognize the different families of words. The law of opposites requires a greater exercise of the reasoning faculties than that of association. There are, besides, many words that are found to be exceptions only to certain classifications. These will be recognized in other families when the latter are introduced; as, **love, dove, etc.** These words, although exceptions to the words of **o long**, have been classified with the **u short family**. So, also, the word **been**, although not found with the words of **e long** has been classified with the words of **i short**. Lead pupils to classify such words by their vowel sounds.

## THE ITALIAN FAMILY.

### a ITALIAN

(before **r, lf, lv, lm** and **un.**)

Make scales of **a** short and **a** Italian. Show pupils that **a** Italian parts the teeth the width of two fingers—more than any other sound of **a**; that a vowel must be tied to a following **r** as the sound is produced. Compare the spaces between the teeth, as **a** short and **a** Italian are sung. Lead pupils to see how little sound is given to the **r**; how flat the tongue lies as we sing up the scale of Italian **a**.

Present lists of words, for comparison, of the sounds of **a** short and **ar**: **bat, bar, cat, car, hat, harm, pat, part, sat, star, hark, hark.** Show, by printing these words with **r**, that none begin with **w**. Explain that the sound of the vowel is changed when **w** precedes **ar**.

## TABLE OF REFERENCE.

Build up words, with Italian **a**, from the following table:

Take **ar**, with **b, c, f, m, p, t, st, sp** and **ch**.

“ **art**, “ **c, d, p, st, ch** and **sm**.

“ **arm**, “ **f, h** and **ch**.

“ **ard**, “ **c, h, l** and **y**.

“ **ark**, “ **b, h, l, m, p, sh** and **sp**.

## MARKING AND SOUNDING.

For marking and sounding these words, see §§ 5, 6, 7, page 24; and Table, page 25. Show pupils how to make the double tie. Form words of the **ar** family on the Rotary. Follow this drill with the marking and sounding of words on page 74 of Speller, and this in turn with corresponding lesson in Reader.

Let the drill upon the **ar** words be followed with the **alm**, **alf** and **alve** families.

Present the words **balm**, **calm**, **palm**, **calf**, **half**, **halve**, and show that in these the **l** is silent and the **a** Italian.

Explain that **a** is Italian when this vowel is followed by **lm**, **lf** or **lv**; also, that in such words **l** must be marked silent. *Exception, valve.*

Remind pupils that they must not tie a vowel to any consonant except **r**, and while **a** has the same sound in **alm** as it has in **ar**, the sound of the **a** does not glide into that of the following consonant. After saying **a** the lips must close to sound **m**; therefore, we must not tie this vowel to the **m**.

**gh=f.**

Show pupils that sometimes **gh=f**. To give it this sound we draw a line through both letters. Present the word **laugh**. In this word **gh** equals **f**, **u** is silent and **a** Italian.

Present words ending in **unt** to show that these letters make **a** Italian. Make scales of **aunt** and lead pupils to see that this word contains one silent vowel. Mark this scale from their dictation: first step, tie **nt**; second, mark **u** silent; third, place two dots over **a** and pronounce. Sing up and down this scale, giving the sound of Italian **a**, and articulating distinctly when the tied consonants are sung.

Follow this with the marking and sounding of the words on page 75 of the Speller, and this, in turn, with the corresponding Reading lesson.

#### Is AND Are.

Present the word **are** and suggest that the family is at last found into which this word has been adopted. To remember this, pupils may print this word repeatedly. It looks so like the words with circumflex **a**, that there will be danger of incorrect marking if this is not done.

Here give Language Lesson on **is** and **are**. Make these words fit their name-words. Present incomplete sentences, leaving blanks where the subjects should be; as, “**— is here**,” “**— is glad**,” “**— is asleep**,” “**— is lost**,” “**— are there**,” “**— are sad**,” “**— are awake**,” “**— are found**.”

Call upon pupils to mark and pronounce these words, that they may be ready to follow the teacher when the complete sentences are read. Call special attention to the word **are**, that they may remember the Italian **a**. Lead them to see that a noun of the singular number must be chosen to be placed in front of **is**, and of the plural in front of **are**.

Ask: “Who is here? Can we say ‘Girls is?’ (Lead pupils to reply.) ‘Boys is?’ No; we must choose a name-word of the singular number—a word that means only one person. How many think ‘Jane is here’ is correct?” Fill the first blank with Jane, ask pupils how to mark the word, and then read the sentence. Mention “here” as a sign-board word. Take the first sentence of the plural. Ask:

"Can we say 'Jane are there'? Why not?" (Lead them to understand that a name-word of the plural number must be chosen for **are**; that we can not use **is**.) Ask: "Can we say, 'Boys are there?'"

Complete all the sentences in this way by asking "Who is?" or "Who are?" after which ask pupils to form sentences in the singular and plural numbers.

#### WAVE VOWELS.

yr=ir=er.

Show that the vowels **e**, **i** and **y** have the same sound when followed by **r**, and that these vowels must be marked with a wave before they are tied to the consonants. After singing the scales make a Letter song of these "wave-vowels," and sing from left to right and from right to left.

er.

In presenting monosyllables with **er**, lead pupils to see that **e** must be marked with a wave, when it is followed by **r** final or **r** with other consonants; as, **her**, **berth**: also, in accented syllables; as, **prefer**, **defer**. But in unaccented syllables with **er**, this vowel must be marked obscure; as, **mother**, **brother**.

Show, also, by presenting the following words, that the intervention of a silent letter does not affect the vowel sound. First mark out the silent letter and afterward tie across it. Show pupils, in this way, that the vowel sound must not be given apart from the **r**; as, **earth**, **earl**, **earn**, **heard**, **hearse**. Here sing the stanza adapted to the wave-vowels, found in the Johnny Story beginning "Three English ponies tied," etc.

ir.

Present words in **ir**; as, **fir**, **firm**, **sir**, **third**, **thirst**, **birth**, **mirth**. Show that these must be marked with waves, and tied underneath as the sound is given.

yr

Present words in **yr**, as, **myrrh**. As this is the only monosyllable with **yr** whose meaning young pupils can be led to understand, desire them to mark it frequently. Refer to its peculiarity —the two silent consonants following the **yr**. After these “pony” or wave-vowels have been presented, pupils may turn to their Spellers and mark all the words found upon page 76, following this with the Reader lessons adapted to these words. Teachers should remember that the words in which these vowel sounds occur can be made as interesting to young pupils as those of the long and short families. Remember that it is not the inanimate letter that hold's the child's attention but the object associated with it.

---

## THE CIRCUMFLEX VOWELS.

## o CIRCUMFLEX.

Make scales of **o** short and **o** circumflex, side by side. Explain, before pupils are permitted to sing these sounds, that the latter is a prolonging of the sound of the former; that lips and teeth must be held in the same position for both sounds. This will prevent their falling into the common error of making **o** circumflex equal to **a** Italian.. Be sure to require a quick, short sound as you point to **o** short. Present **on**, **not**, **hot**, **doll** for marking. Sing up on **o** and down on **or**; up on **or** and down on **o**; and lastly sing up and down alternately; as, **o**, **or**. Refer to the ponies in the Johnny Story. Show, by the following words, that **or** is sometimes followed by another consonant, and sometimes by a consonant and a vowel. Mark, sound and tie.

<b>or</b>	<b>form</b>	<b>north</b>
<b>for</b>	<b>corn</b>	<b>sort</b>
<b>nor</b>	<b>lord</b>	<b>horse</b>

As you present the above words, lead pupils to see that words beginning with **w** do not belong to this **or** family. Tell them **or**, in such words, must not have the same mark. It will be easy for them to remember this. Whenever they find the word **or**, or any words where these letters are preceded by any consonant except **w**, the circumflex mark must be placed above the vowel and the latter tied to the **r** following as the sound is given. The words with **wor** must not be marked until their families are introduced. Present such words as **north**, and show that here a double tie must be made. First, tie the **or**, as you sound, and afterward tie again the final consonants; as, nôrth

Pupils will learn, from this, that words in which these vowels are found, must first have the correct mark placed above the vowel; that this vowel must be tied to its **r**, and, lastly, the final consonants (back-door keys) tied. This is to impress pupils with the thought that the sound of smooth, or glide **r**, must not be separated from its vowel. When, therefore, any word is found in which a vowel is tied to **r** to show this blended sound, we must begin the marking of that word by placing the diacritical mark above the vowel, instead of first tying the final consonants as we do in such words as **fond**, **best**, etc.

Lead pupils to see how they may distinguish between **o** short and **o** circumflex, by presenting comparative lists of words with **ó** and **ôr** and calling upon them to mark, alternately; as,

<b>corn</b>	<b>bond</b>	<b>born</b>	<b>shot</b>
<b>horn</b>	<b>sot</b>	<b>sort</b>	<b>pot</b>
<b>morn</b>	<b>cod</b>	<b>cord</b>	<b>spot</b>

As there are exceptions (**port**, **sport**, etc.) in **or**, it will be well for pupils to mark these words repeatedly before they mark them in their Reading lessons.

Also present other words for comparison; words ending in **e**.

Show, by reference to these, that when **r** is the only consonant found between **o** and final **e**, the **o**, as a rule, may be marked long.

But when another consonant follows **or**, then we expect the **or** to be circumflex, as

**more      morse      tore      torse      pore      horse.**

Mention, however, that we shall, occasionally, find words of the **o** long family in which the **O** is separated from **e** final by two consonants; as, **force**: so this will lead us to try such words before we mark them. The *sense* of what we read will always aid us in determining the correct pronunciation. (Spellers, page 77.)

**u CIRCUMFLEX.**

Make scales of **u** short and **u** circumflex. Lead pupils to observe the similarity of the position of the teeth in the production of these sounds. Show that more time must be given to the latter. Sing up on **u** short and down on **ûr**, then up and down, alternately. As the teacher marks each **ur** of the scale, pupils may say "circumflex," and, as these letters are tied, they may give the circumflex sound. Let the singing of the scale be followed by the singing of the stanza found in the Johnny Story which refers to the sound of **u** circumflex.

Present the following words for marking, alternately, sounding **u** short in the first, and **ûr**, in the second: **bun, burn, fun, burst, sun, surf, tun, turn, stun, turf.** Desire pupils to tie in your presence. Remind them of the double tie, when **ur** is followed by a consonant; as, **bûrn**.

**or = ûr.**

Make equivalent scales (**w**)**or** = **ûr** and show how the **w** changes the sound of **or**. Place the circumflex *under* the vowel to indicate this change. Refer to the ponies in the Johnny Story. Present words for marking: **work, worm, worth, word, worst.**

**se after ar, er, or and ur.**

Leave **s** unmarked in final **se** when it follows any glide-r vowel. As, **parse, verse, horse, purse.** Also, *in some nouns*, when it follows **ou**. As, **house.**

## THE BROAD FAMILY.

## a BROAD.

Make scales of  $\hat{o}$ —a. Here give a review lesson upon this sound. Show how it parts the rounded lips. Refer to the sign of equality to impress pupils with the thought that these vowels, although marked differently, speak alike. Refer to what has already been said about words beginning with **war**, to show that **w** changes the sound of **a** Italian to **a** broad. Present the following words in a column, concealing the first consonant of each that pupils may see they would all belong to the Italian family were it not for **w**; show that **w** makes little **a** say a, in these words: **warm**, **ward**, **wart**, **warp**, **warn**. Show that **a** broad must be tied to **r**. Let this drill be followed by marking, alternately, the following words: **arm**, **warm**, **art**, **wart**, **hard**, **ward**.

## a BROAD; AS IN all.

Show that **ll** final makes **a** broad. Place **all** upon the inner section of the Rotary and show how large a family Mr. Broad has. Build up words from this table of reference:

Take **all** with **b**, **c**, **f**, **g**, **h**, **p**, **w**, **st**, **sm**, **squ** and **thr**.

Show that Mr. Short has adopted one of these word-children (**shall**) into his family.

## alk AND alt.

Show, by presenting the following words, that **lk** and **lt** make **a** broad; also, that **l** is silent before final **k** but not before final **t**; as, **balk**, **walk**, **chalk**, **stalk**, **calk**; **halt**, **malt**, **salt**. Show that **ul** makes **a** broad; as, **vault**, **Gault**, **fault**, **Paul**, **Saul**, **haul**.

## aw.

Show that, wherever the vowels **a** and **w** are found together, we always mark **w** silent and **a** broad. Make scales of a—aw. Form words upon the Rotary with **aw**, **awl** and **awn**. Build up words in **aw** with **c**, **l**, **m**, **p**, **r** and **s**. Point to **a** broad and **o** circumflex as you sing these scales.

**aught AND ought.**

Show, by the following words, that when we find **a** or **o** in front of **ught** we must mark the former broad and the latter circumflex, after marking the three letters silent found between the first vowel and final **t**. We must remember, too, to mark out each silent letter separately, saying "silent" as we run the oblique line through it; as, **ought**, **nought**, **thought** — **aught**, **naught**, **caught**. Show, also, that the proper name, **Vaughn**, follows this rule; **ughn**, with another final consonant, making the **a** broad. Let corresponding lessons in Spellers and Readers be given as each family is presented.

**a HALF BROAD.**

Show, by the following words, how **w** changes the sound of **a**: **was**, **wad**, **wan**, **watch**, **wash**. Lead pupils to understand that, as a rule, they may place one dot under **a**, and give it the sound of **o** short, when **wa** is not followed by **r**.

**e CIRCUMFLEX.**

Make scales of **e** short and **e** circumflex, and show that the latter is a prolonging of the sound of the former. Show that, in the following words, **er** has this circumflex sound, leading pupils to observe that **e** final is silent as in words of the Long family: **êre**, **thêre**, **whêre**. Show, also, that in some words the silent letter is found between the circumflex **e** and the final **r**; as, **their**, **pear**. In such cases we must mark the vowel silent and tie the **e** to its **r**, gliding the vowel sound into the **r** as we tie; as, **theîr**, **pear**.

Lead pupils to understand that the vowel sound must not be separated from the sound of the **r** that follows, and that they *must always mark out a vowel before they place the circumflex over the e*. This will prevent any confusion that might arise when words with wave-vowels are found. Require pupils to copy and mark these words repeatedly, sounding correctly as they tie.  
(*Spellers, page 81.*)

## SIGN-BOARD WORDS.

Give a Language Lesson on *sign-board words* (adverbs or place). Pupils may ask and answer questions in turn, bringing in these two words **where** and **there** each time, the teacher writing questions and answers as they are given and underscoring the two adverbs; as

“**Where** is Jane Brown?” “She is **there** in her seat.”

“**Where** do you live?” “I live just over **there**, by the church.”

THE PRONOUNS **They** AND **Their**.

Show that such words as **they** and **their** stand for name-words and are called pronouns. Lead pupils to see that these words stand for two persons or things. Point to two boys and say “**They** study **their** lessons,” “**They** move **their** feet,” “**They** turn **their** heads.” Print **they** and **their**, repeatedly, and desire pupils to mark these words—the first equal to **a** long, the second to **e** circumflex. Point out the reason for the different markings of **e** in these words; lead pupils to observe that it is the **r** following that gives **e** its circumflex sound. Show that **there** and **their** belong to the same family; the former is a sign-board word showing **where**; the latter means to own, or possess—as, **their** books, **their** slates, **their** pens, etc.

Pupils may fill their slates with the words **there**, **where**, and **their** and after marking each, may draw one line under the sign-boards and two lines under the pronouns. This drill is to teach, not only the pronunciation, but the *orthography* of these words.

**a** CIRCUMFLEX.

Make scales of **are**. Show that words with **a** circumflex, like those with **e** circumflex, always have a silent vowel. Sometimes final **e**, and sometimes the silent vowel precedes the **r**; as, **fare**, **fair**, **pare**, **pair**. If Webster’s suggestion be preferred that **a** circumflex is an equivalent of **āē**, as in **faery**, require this given correctly. Present words with **a** long and **a** circumflex, side by

side. Show how **re** final in words of the second column tells us that we must mark the first vowel of each word, **a** circumflex. Point, alternately, to words in each column, that pupils may realize that any other consonant with **e** final makes the **a** long. After this has been made perfectly plain, call pupils up, in turn, to mark the following words:

babe	bare	page	pare
fade	fare	tame	tare
safe	care	wade	hare
sale	dare	wave	rare

#### a SHORT ITALIAN

(before **ss, ff, sk, st, sp, nt, ft, nce** and **th**.)

Give the sound of this vowel and lead pupils to see that the teeth do not part as much as for **a** Italian. Suggest that they may think of the two dots as standing for two fingers, and the one dot for one finger. This is merely to call attention to the difference in the position of the teeth and lips as these sounds are produced. As they sing up and down these (**ä ä**) scales, they may measure the distance between the teeth.

Also, desire pupils to sing **ä ä ä**, from left to right, to the air ("Evening Star") found on page 242, Songs, and watch the movement of each other's lips. Daily practice in the singing of these sounds trains the ear, and pupils thus become critical in the pronunciation of words in which the Italian, and short Italian sounds, are heard.

Before presenting words with short Italian **a**, talk further about double or like consonants. Present the following words and show that we may expect to draw a breve-cap over the vowel found in front, as soon as we have marked the right hand consonant silent: **add, ebb, egg, inn, odd, off, cuff**. Explain that exceptions are found in monosyllables belonging to the families of **aff, all** and **ass** and in the accented syllables of longer words.

We often find words with **ll** in the family of Mr. **O Long** and often **ull** in the family of **oo** short. Because of this, we must determine by the sense of what we are reading to which family such words belong; as,

"**Poll** went to play with her **doll**, while Ned ran out to **roll** his **hoop**."

"Did you ever hear a bell **toll**?"

"Do not **loll**; sit up straight."

"What a **dull** day. Do **pull** up the shades and let the sunlight **in**."

We shall learn, by marking and sounding the following words, that **ss** and **ff** make **a** say "á:" **lass**, **mass**, **pass**, **staff**, **chaff**, **quaff**. Do not hasten over the short Italian words. Present one family at a time. Show that **sp**, **st**, **ft** and **sk** are whispers.

Pupils may learn the correct sound of **a** short Italian, by repeatedly marking words of this family and parting the teeth the proper distance as this sound is produced. Make a scale of each family name, in turn. Take, first, **asp**, but do not tie the consonants nor place the dot over the vowel. Sing the following to the air found upon page 244 of the Songs ("John Brown's Body"), placing a dot over each **a** found at the end of a line as you sing. Place a dot over each **a** of the chorus *before* you begin to sing:

**A** in front of **sk** must have the sound of á;

**A** in front of **sk** must have the sound of á;

**A** in front of **sk** must have the sound of á;

**A, a, a, a, a, a.**

(Measure with one finger to be sure of the space between the teeth.)

**Chorus:**—**A, a, a, a, a, a, a, a, a, a,**

**Ask, ask, ask, ask, ask, ask.**

Tie the final consonants (lock the back door keys) rapidly as you sing **ask**. Sing very distinctly. Sing, in a similar manner, **as** you

present each family name. In presenting words with **ant** give comparative lists:

aunt	ant
flaunt	slant
taunt	grant

Mark alternately. Lead pupils to see that when **nt** is tied, if silent **u** be found in front, then the **a** must be marked with two dots above. But if the **a** is found immediately in front, then one dot. In presenting the **ance** family, mark the **e** silent and the **c** soft before the singing begins. While singing the chorus, tie **nc**. After marking scales of the **ance** family, show, by the following words, that **nce** makes every vowel short except **a**; as **fence**, **mince**, **sconce**, **dunce**. Build up other words ending in **nce**. Present this

#### TABLE OF REFERENCE

for short Italian words:

- Take **ass**, with **l**, **m** and **p**.
- “ **asp**, “ **g**, **h**, **r** and **gr**.
- “ **ast**, “ **c**, **f**, **m**, **p** and **l**.
- “ **aff**, “ **ch**, **st** and **qu**.
- “ **aft**, “ **sh**, **dr** and **gr**.
- “ **ant**, “ **p**, **Gr**, **sl** and **ch**.
- “ **ance**, “ **d**, **pr**, **gl** and **tr**.
- “ **ath**, “ **b**, **p** and **wr**.

In words of the **ath** family, show that **th** whispers and should be tied underneath (th). Also present **baths**, **laths**, **paths**, and show that the addition of **s** changes the sound of **th** and makes it sonant.

## SHORT VOWELS.

Give a review lesson upon words ending in **dge** and **tch**; as, **badge**, **match**. Show that *two* consonants are found to follow the vowels contained in each word. For this reason they do not come under the rule for the long vowels.

Explain that **d** is always silent when followed by **ge**, and **t** when followed by **ch**. Give reasons for this. When we sound soft **g**, the tongue first presses the hard palate just as it does when we sound **d**. If, therefore, the **d** were not silent, the word would be **bad-ge**. It is the same with **ch**. The sound of **t** is contained in the **ch**-whisper, and, if the **t** were not silent, the word would be **mat-ch**. Show by the following words, that, with the exception of words in **ance** and **ange**, all vowels must be marked short when followed by **dge**, **tch**, **nch**, **nce** and **nge**:

<b>edge</b> ,	<b>etch</b> ,	<b>wench</b> ,	<b>fence</b> ,	<b>hinge</b> ,
<b>ridge</b> ,	<b>hitch</b> ,	<b>inch</b> ,	<b>wince</b> ,	<b>singe</b> ,
<b>dodge</b> ,	<b>notch</b> ,	<b>pinch</b> ,	<b>sconce</b> ,	<b>cringe</b> ,
<b>budge</b> ,	<b>Dutch</b> ,	<b>lunch</b> ,	<b>dunce</b> ,	<b>lunge</b> .

(*Spellers, page 83.*)

Make a separate lesson of each column of words. Show, first, that **j-g-dge** are equivalents and that **d** must always be marked silent in front of **ge**; secondly, that **t** must always be marked silent in front of **ch**. In marking such words as **lunch**, tie the last three consonants. Tell pupils they will always know they are to mark any vowel short (except **a**) as soon as **nch** has been tied. In words ending in **tch**, they must remember, first, to tie and sound **ch**; next, mark **t** silent, and lastly, to mark the vowel short. Let this general rule guide pupils in the marking of words in which **a** is not found.

*Rule:*—When the first or only vowel of a word is followed by two or more consonants mark it short, if the first of these consonants be not **r**; as, **fence**, **hinge**, **dunce**.

Show, by illustrations, that in this, as in other rules, exceptions are found in **a**, as **strange**; in **i**, as **bind**; in **o**, as **roll**; in **u**, as **full**.

**VOWEL MARKINGS.**

For monosyllables containing but one vowel and ending with one or more consonants (*r* excepted).

ăb	ăm	ăp	ăd	ăn	ăt	ăg	ăs	ăx
----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----

ĕb	ĕm	ĕp	ĕd	ĕn	ĕt	ĕg	ĕs	ĕx
----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----

ĭb	ĭm	ĭp	ĭd	ĭn	ĭt	ĭg	ĭs	ĭx
----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----

ōb	ōm	ōp	ōd	<u>ōn</u>	ōt	ōg		ōx
----	----	----	----	-----------	----	----	--	----

ŭb	ŭm	ŭp	ŭd	ŭn	ŭt	ŭg	ŭs	ŭx
----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----

ăek	ănd	ăng	ănk	ămp	ăsh		ăch
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	--	-----

ĕek	ĕnd			ĕmp	ĕsh		ĕch
-----	-----	--	--	-----	-----	--	-----

ĭek	<u>ind</u>	ĭng	ĭnk	ĭmp	ĭsh	ĭch	ĭch
-----	------------	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

ōek	ōnd	ōng		ōmp	ōsh		ōch
-----	-----	-----	--	-----	-----	--	-----

ŭek	ŭnd	ŭng	ŭnk	ŭmp	ŭsh	ŭch	ŭch
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

<u>ăss</u>	<u>ăsk</u>	<u>ăsp</u>	<u>ăst</u>	<u>ăff</u>	<u>ăft</u>	<u>ănt</u>	<u>ănch</u>	<u>ăth</u>
------------	------------	------------	------------	------------	------------	------------	-------------	------------

ĕss	ĕsk		ĕst	ĕff	ĕft	ĕnt	ĕnch	ĕth
-----	-----	--	-----	-----	-----	-----	------	-----

ĭss	ĭsk	ĭsp	ĭst	ĭff	ĭft	ĭnt	ĭnch	ĭth
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	------	-----

ōss			<u>ōst</u>	<u>ōff</u>	<u>ōft</u>	<u>ōnt</u>		<u>ōth</u>
-----	--	--	------------	------------	------------	------------	--	------------

ŭss	ŭsk		<u>ŭst</u>	<u>ŭff</u>	<u>ŭft</u>	<u>ŭnt</u>	<u>ŭnch</u>	
-----	-----	--	------------	------------	------------	------------	-------------	--

<u>ăll</u>	<u>ăld</u>	<u>ălk</u>		<u>ălt</u>	<u>ălm</u>		<u>ălf</u>
------------	------------	------------	--	------------	------------	--	------------

ĕll	ĕld	ĕlk		ĕlt	ĕlm		ĕlf
-----	-----	-----	--	-----	-----	--	-----

ĭll	<u>ĭld</u>	ĭlk		ĭlt	ĭlm		
-----	------------	-----	--	-----	-----	--	--

ōll	<u>ōld</u>	<u>ōlk</u>	<u>ōlt</u>				<u>ōlf</u>
-----	------------	------------	------------	--	--	--	------------

ŭll		ŭlk	ŭlt				ŭlf
-----	--	-----	-----	--	--	--	-----

## EXPLANATION.

About one-third of the monosyllables of the language are embraced in the 142 classifications of the accompanying table. In these classifications the vowels, as a rule, are short.

One line under a classification denotes that there are *occasional* words in that classification which are exceptions to the vowel marking indicated in the table.

Two lines under denote classifications in which the vowel, *as a rule*, is not short, but is marked as indicated in the table.

A blank denotes that there are no words (or very few) in the classification which would belong in that place.

The consonant markings are the most common ones in the classifications given. There are a few exceptions. As, *gas, this, with, yolk*.

**NOTE.**—With few exceptions, rules governing the markings of monosyllables apply equally to the accented syllables of longer words, but in unaccented syllables the vowel sounds are usually shortened.

## a

A majority of the classifications in which the vowel, as a rule, is not short (observe the double lines), are of words in which the vowel is *a*. Of the 31 *a* classifications, there are 15 in which the vowel is not short. But *a* short Italian (of which there are 9 classifications) is so nearly the same as *a* short, that there are practically only 6 *a* classifications in which the vowel is not short, to-wit: *a* broad, in *all, ald, alk* and *alt*; and *a* Italian in *alm* and *alf*.

In the *a* short classifications, the *a* is marked equivalent to *o* short when preceded by *w* (or by *u* with the sound of *w*). As, *swab, swap, squad, wan, what, was, wand, swamp, wash, watch*, etc. Exceptions, *swam, wag, wax, whack, swang*.

## e

The vowel is short in all of the *e* classifications.

## i

The vowel is short in all of the *i* classifications, except *ind* and *ild*, where it is long. As, *kind, wild*, etc. Exceptions, *wind, gild*.

## o

The vowel is short in all of the *o* classifications, except *old, olk* and *olt*, where it is long. As, *bolt, folk, bolt*, etc.

**NOTE.**—In some of the *o* short classifications, there are occasional exceptions to the rule for marking the vowel short. As, *son, pot, both, roll, wolf*

## u

The vowel is short in all of the *u* classifications.

**NOTE.**—In some of the *u* short classifications, there are occasional exceptions to the rule. As, *put, puss, bush, full, pull*.

**gh = f.**

We shall find many exceptions in this family—words that look as though they *should* belong here, yet do not. In such cases we must mark the same word repeatedly, in order to fix it in our memories. In words where **ou** precedes **gh** final, as a rule, run a line through **gh** to make it an equivalent of **f** and mark the **u** silent. Do this without regard to the sound of the vowel found in front; as, **laugh, cough.**

**ō—ōugh.**

Make scales and present the words **dough** and **though** and show that, although they look exactly like those we have been marking, they have three silent letters and are found in the family of Mr **O** Long. There is one other word in which three silent letters are found—**through**. We must class this with the family of **oo** long. It will help us to remember, if we think that little **o** shivers and says “**o**” because she is so near the cross dog that says “**r**.”

Again, we shall find more words with **ugh**. These belong to the **U** Long family and have the **gh** silent; as, **Hugh, Pugh.** Of course we can not mark **u** silent here, because it is the only vowel of the word. As soon as we learn the different families to which these words belong we shall remember when to make **gh** equivalent to **f** and when to mark **ugh** silent. We shall, also, be able to write them correctly when we hear such words spoken.

Desire pupils to make a line of words of the Long family, placing **dough** and **though** among them; as, **go, so, no, dough, though:** also, a line of words in which **oo** long is found; as **do, two, spoon, through.**

**u SILENT.**

In monosyllables when **a, e** or **i** is preceded by **gu**, mark **u** silent; as, **guard, guest, guide.** Show that such words do not obey the rule, because the right hand vowel is sounded, while the first vowel is silent. The word **Guelph** is an exception.

ch = sh; tch = ch; eh = k.

Present words to illustrate these sounds: (1.) ch, as chaise; (2.) ch tied, as wrench, clinch; (3.) ch, as chrism, chrome. Show, by marking these words, that when we do not tie ch we must mark the h silent and the c hard.

**b** SILENT.

Mark **b** final silent after **m**; as, **lamb**, **limb**.

**mpt.**

Mark **p** silent when found between **m** and **t**; as, **prompt**.

---

## COMPOUND WORDS.

Desire pupils to copy, mark and pronounce the following compound words, giving you their reasons for marking. Print these upon the board for this purpose: **cab-man**, **bell-boy**, **out-house**, **cow-bell**, **noon-tide**, **tell-tale**, **mill-stone**, **hemp-seed**, **bon-fire**, **pay-day**, **school-boy**, **play-thing**, **stove-pipe**, **ware-house**, **grand-sire**, **scare-crow**, **gas-light**, **birth-day**, **grass-plot**, **sea-gull**, **turn-pike**, **sun-shine**, **tooth-ache**, **fir-tree**, **oat-meal**, **snow-drop**, **work-shop**, **rain-bow**, **foot-path**, **salt-box**, **blue-bird**, **cord-wood**, **corn-crib**, **cart-wheel**, **horn-pipe**, **hen-coop**, **ant-hill**, **path-way**, **coach-man**, **rail-road**.

---

**Note.**—Teachers must bear in mind that the rules governing the pronunciation of the words found in the Speller, from the beginning of the 24th to the last word on the 86th page, are especially adapted to the correct marking of monosyllables.

Although the same general rules may be applied to words of more than one syllable, a greater number of exceptions will be found in these. This, however, does not retard the progress of the pupils. The knowledge and independence gained through the marking of monosyllables, give them the power to pronounce, without instructions, the more difficult words found in the new lessons.

## WORDS WITH EQUIVALENT SOUNDS.

Present lists of words, with equivalent sounds, for marking; as

best	chest	says	said
on	log	fox	was      wash
sit	pin	been	
cook	could	pull	
moon	poor	move	through true    grew
cur	worth		
birth	myrrh	were	
bun	son	come	done
morn	caught	salt	walk      warm draw

---

## DISSYLLABLES.

*Do not divide words into syllables; speak of them as words in two pieces.* Lead pupils to understand that all the words thus far presented have been of one syllable, and that the rules given for the marking of these (with the exception of some in *ed*) apply especially to monosyllables. Pupils may repeat after the teacher the following words, giving the falling inflection: **bell, stove, chair, wall.** (If they fail in the falling inflection, ask them to bow their heads as they pronounce each word.)

And now these words: **baby, cradle, window, apple.** Point out the difference; the latter are words of *two* syllables—words in *two pieces.* Here show pupils, by illustrations, how impossible it is to pronounce words in two pieces with a *single impulse of the voice.* This makes it very easy for them to recognize such words. Lead them to understand that if we mark words aright and place the accent marks correctly, the true pronunciation must follow. Our next step leads us to speak of accent.

Explain to pupils that these parts or pieces of words are called **syllables;** that we must not pronounce both syllables with the same

accent. In the first, the voice rises a little and falls in a wave accent, making it seem as though we gave this syllable more force; as, **baby**. Bear in mind that the rules and directions, thus far, were applied especially to monosyllables. In introducing longer words we shall find that the *syllables* comprising these, in many instances, follow the same rules; yet pupils should be prepared, gradually, to expect more exceptions hereafter.

In this as in monosyllables, we present *families* of words. We will first take the family of **ing**, and show, in the words which follow, that, in a general way, syllables are governed by the same rules as the monosyllables we have learned. Explain the meaning of the following

**Rule:**—In syllables of two, three and four letters, ending in single consonants, mark the vowel short, except when it is followed by **r**.

(Here refer to syllables in which **a** is preceded by **w** or followed by **r, w, ll, lk, ss, ff**, etc., and lead pupils to observe that these consonants and the vowel **w** affect its sound just as they did when they preceded or followed this vowel in monosyllables; as, **wanting, farming, pawing, calling, walking, passing, quaffing**.)

#### THE **ing** FAMILY.

Give the following drill that pupils may remember to mark the vowel short when the syllable ends in a consonant, but long, if the vowel is its final letter:

ab	ba	ad	da	ag	ga	am	ma
an	na	ap	pa	at	ta	eb	be
ed	de	ef	fe	en	ne	et	te

Show, also, that if a vowel constitutes a syllable by itself it must be marked long; as **âble, idâ**.

Make a scale of **ing**. Sing up and down after pupils have marked these syllables. Remind them that **ng** final made the **i**, found in front, short in the *monosyllables* they marked. Require distinct articulation as the scales are sung. Refer to the nasal sound of **n**; also, to the fact that **g** must be marked silent in the

syllable **ing**. Pupils may copy and mark **ing** ten times, and thus lead the eye to recognize the syllable **ing** at sight before the marking of dissyllables commences.

Refer to the effect of *double consonants upon the vowels preceding them*. Show that we expect to mark such vowels short. Speak of the exceptions given for monosyllables (**ll**, **ss** and **ff**) Lead pupils to see that they place the breve over the first vowel, because it is found in front of double consonants. Show, also, that the silent letter belongs to the last syllable.

#### ACCENT.

*Rule for Accent:*—Place the accent in *front of the syllable containing the family name*.

Present the following words for marking: **matting, hopping, bedding, humming, letting, cupping, lagging, running, hitting, pressing, stuffing, cunning.**

Call pupils, in turn, to the board, to sound and mark the above words. Pronounce the word as the accent mark is drawn. There should not be an instant's hesitation in pronouncing dissyllables. If the previous drill upon monosyllables has been thorough, pupils will recognize the first syllables of the former words at sight. The marking of the family name **ing** need not be continued after pupils can recognize it by sight.

Call pupils up, in turn, to mark and place the accent mark over the following words before pronouncing them: **banding, hacking, banging, banking, standing, stacking, hanging, sinking, ending, decking, ringing, linking, mending, kicking, singing, winking.**

Refer to the difference in the sound of the vowels preceding **nd**; show that **a** and **e** are short while **i** is long, and thus lead pupils to realize that these first syllables follow precisely the same rules as did monosyllables; that these words of the **ing** family are, indeed, made from words of the Short family, with the exception of **binding, finding**, etc. Show also, by the following dissyllables, that words of the Long family are changed into the family of **ing**

by dropping the final e of the primitive word and adding ing: as, **skating, taming, pacing, taking, biting, chiming, racing, making, voting, timing, raging, boring, doting, tuning, paging, writing.**

Pupils will remember that final e is marked silent in all the words of the Long family. Now, the only difference, where ing is added to the primitive word, is that this vowel *is left out altogether*. We must, however, remember that it was there before these words came into the **ing** family, and, for this reason, the first vowel of such words must be marked long. No confusion can arise, if pupils will mark the first vowel long when it is found in front of *a single consonant*; but short, if in front of *double consonants*.

Give a review drill in monosyllables with the equivalent vowels **ai, ea, oa, ou** and **ee** before you introduce other families of **ing**, thus showing that the same rules for marking are to be observed. (Place the accent mark in front of the family name.)

**failing, reading, roaring, seeing,**  
**railing, speaking, soaring, sleeping,**  
**sailing, reaping, pouring, creeping.**

#### st AND ste.

Show, by presenting **paste, taste, waste**, and marking the first vowel long (before e final is erased and ing added), why **a** is long when followed by **st**. Explain that it is because these words belonged to the Long family before they joined the family of **ing**; that it is **st final** that gives **a** its short Italian sound and not **ste**. Follow this drill by marking similar words in Spellers and in Readers.

#### NAME-WORDS AND ACTION-WORDS.

Show that both kinds of words are found in the **ing** family. If, from previous drills, pupils have been made familiar with action-words of the present and past tenses they will be led to distinguish readily between the two in words ending in **ing**. Print

**matting** and **netting**. Mark these words and call upon pupils to pronounce them. Lead them to recognize them as name-words.

Desire Ben to run, and then say "Ben is running." Ned may hop; after which say "Ned is hopping." Let pupils devote ten minutes to *doing* what you suggest, and thus lead them to see that these words which mean *action* are made by adding *ing* to an action-word. They will thus be ready to realize later how closely the participle is related to the verb.

Remind pupils of the little watches, **d** and **ed**, that determine when words are of the past tense (when the action was done in past time), and tell them that they may think of the *ing* found after an action-word as of a little watch that shows present time; as, "John is walking" means that he is walking *now*; "Jane is talking" means that she is talking *now*. How would it sound to say "Ben is hopping yesterday or to-morrow?" Hereafter, let us try to tell, from the sense of what we are reading, whether words of the *ing* family are name-words or action-words. If we come to **matting** or **netting**, we know these are name-words; but, if we find **skipping**, **running** or **jumping** in the lesson, we know that our feet must move; therefore they are made from action-words.

After marking the *ing* words in their Spellers, pupils may underscore any familiar name-words and point out the words that signify action. Desire pupils to pronounce such words as **running**, **skipping**, **hopping** in a quick, cheerful way. Let the meaning of the word guide them in the natural expression of it. Drill upon such words as **hush**, **hark**, **softly**. Place upon the board a column of words of the Short family; as **fan**, **pin**, **tack**, **stand**. Prove that these are name-words by pointing to each object. Show, also, that these are not always name but sometimes action-words. Say: "I have a **fan**. Let me **fan** you. This is a **pin**. Let me **pin** your dress. I found a **tack**. Let me **tack** the carpet." Lead pupils to tell when such words are name and when action-words, as they occur in their Readers. Refer to them simply as name and action-words. Show how these words may be changed into words of

the **ing** family. When the word ends in a single consonant, double this in front of **ing**; as, **fanning**, **pinning**. When it ends in two consonants, merely add **ing**; as, **tacking**, **standing**.

#### THE **le** FAMILIES.

Make a scale of **le** and sing up and down, holding the tongue in the same position throughout the singing. First show that *all words* ending in **le** belong to one of these families, and that, as in the Long families, the final **e** is always silent. Present, first, words with double consonants, reminding pupils to mark the vowels short found in front of these. Show, also, that the silent consonant belongs to the last syllable. Mark from right to left, and pronounce as you draw the accent mark: **apple**, **paddle**, **saddle**, **raffle**, **babble**, **ripple**, **settle**, **scuffle**, **cattle**, **tussle**, **kettle**, **shuffle**, **bottle**, **muzzle**, **fizzle**, **dazzle**.

After marking and pronouncing these words, pupils may repeat them for the practice. Let the sound of the **l** be short and distinct. Ask if it would sound well to say **paddul**, **saddul**. Call pupils up, in turn, to draw lines under the name-words. They may speak the words that denote action. Explain how a brook *babbles* (Spellers, page 89). Give drills upon these sounds, being sure that not a *particle of vowel sound* slips in between the consonants; avoid **bul**, **pul**, **ful**, &c.:

**bl pl fl gl kl tl dl**

Tie, to show that these consonants speak together. Here explain that there are different families of **le**: that they may be distinguished by the consonant in front of **le**; as,

**ble, cle, dle, fle, gle, kle, ple.**

If pupils have been made familiar with the keys of monosyllables they will readily recognize the same in dis- and trisyllables. As no such keys have been found as **vl**, **wl** or **yl**, they will see, at once, that such letters must not be tied.

No confusion need arise in marking. Pupils should be led to look at the last two letters of the word. If these be **le**, they will

know final **e** must be marked silent. If the two consonants preceding the **l** are *not* alike, tie the consonant nearest the **l** to this letter, to form the key of the second syllable and thus find to which of the **le** families the word belongs: as, in **sample**; if we mark **e** silent and tie **pl** for the key of the second syllable, we say that this word belongs to the "ple family." In **able**, we find by tying the key that this word belongs to the "ble family." After thus learning the family names, pupils should be led to see that the letter, or the letters left in front, constitute the first syllable of the word. Also, if this first syllable end in a single consonant, its vowel must be marked short; if in **a** vowel, the latter must be marked long; or, if double consonants follow the first vowel, it, of course, must be marked short.

Conceal with the finger the second syllables of the following words, that pupils may see that the first syllables follow the rules that govern monosyllables: **ample**, **dimple**, **table**, **title**, **bugle**. After tying the keys in the above words, call upon pupils to give other words found in the same families; as all the words that can be found in the four families of **ple**, **ble**, **tle** and **gle**.

Teachers should remember that words must not be presented upon the board, divided into syllables separated by hyphens. It is not thus they are found in Readers. Pupils must be instructed how to mark the syllables, and, afterward, where to place the accent. In dissyllables ending in **ing** and **le**, the simple suggestion to place the accent in front of the family name is enough to lead pupils to accent such words correctly. (Spellers.)

#### **óu = ū.**

Make scales of **u** and **ou** and sing; after which present the words **double** and **trouble**. Lead pupils to see that in all words of the **le** family, the second syllable must begin with **l** or with the key of which it is a part.

#### **kle AND gle.**

Present the following words and mark **n** with a line under it before **k** and its equivalent **c**; also before **g** hard: **ankle**, **uncle**, **bangle**, **single**, **bungle**.

Lead pupils to see, by tying their keys, that these words belong in the families of **kle**, **cle** and **gle**; that, although a line must be drawn under **n** (as in monosyllables with **nk**), *we must never tie across syllables*. Pronounce the above words to prove this; show that our organs of speech tell where syllables should be divided; that we do not say "**ank-le**" but "**an-kle**," not "**sing-le**" but "**sin-gle**." Give special drills upon the pronunciation of such words after they have been marked in the Spellers.

As a rule, in dissyllables underline **n** when it is followed by **k**, **c**, **q**, or **g**; as, **ankle**, **anger**, **uncle**, **conquest**. There are, however, exceptions in words where **con** is a prefix; as, **concur**. When the **g** belongs to the second syllable, we draw a line under **n** and mark the **g** of the second syllable hard; as **finger**.

#### THE Y SHORT FAMILIES.

As a rule, **y** final, in unaccented syllables, equals **i** short; as, **jelly**, **putty**, **happy**, **buggy**, etc. Pupils may, therefore, expect to place a breve over **y** final in the dissyllables presented in the Spellers for this purpose.

#### RY AND ROW.

Show by comparison, how **rr** makes **a** Italian, **u** circumflex and all the wave vowels short. Point out the vowels found in front of **rr** in the following dissyllables and show that *all must be marked short*: **mar**, **marry**; **tar**, **tarry**; **fern**, **ferry**; **born**, **borrow**; **sort**, **sorrow**; **worm**, **worry**; **cur**, **curry**; **hurt**, **hurry**; **burn**, **burrow**. **Err** and **burr** are exceptions.

Show that in **worry**, **o** is an equivalent of **u** short. (Spellers, page 92.)

#### THE ER FAMILY.

Make scales of **ú—ó** and **sing**. Present these words for pupils to mark: **other**, **mother**, **brother**, **feather**, **leather**. Place the inverted breve under the **er** to show that, in unaccented syllables, **er** final has its glide obscure sound. Contrast **mother**, **brother**, etc., with **prefer**, **defer**, and show, when **er** final is

found in an accented syllable, the *wave* must be placed above the *e*; that when *th* is found between two vowels, as *other*, a line must be drawn through these consonants to show that they are voiced; that when *ar*, *er*, *ir*, *or* and *yr* are final unaccented syllables they must be marked as equivalent sounds; as, *collar*, *ladder*, *fakir*, *tumor*, *murmur*, *satyr*. A few exceptions may be found to the above rule. (Spellers, page 93.)

#### THE QUIET FAMILY.

(sh=s=c=t=x=ch.)

In presenting these equivalents say: "Whenever we wish to indicate that these consonants have the sound of *sh*, we place a dot under them. You may think this dot stands for mamma's finger, when she says, 'sh! the baby is asleep.' So, whenever we find a syllable beginning with this sound, we say it belongs to this quiet family. But how are we to *know* when to place the dot under? Let us first take words of *one* family—the family of *tion*. Whenever we find *t* in front of *io* in the same syllable, we place a dot under this consonant, and sound *sh*. Next, we always mark the vowel *following this dotted consonant silent*; and, lastly, we make the *o* equal *ū*. We mark this syllable from *left* to *right* that we may remember about the dotted consonant and the silent vowel following it, and then sing this family name until we know it perfectly. In marking *tion* say 'sh, silent, *ō*,' and then pronounce *tion* and thus show that it equals *shun*.

Make scales, tiōn=s̄tōn=shūn, and call pupils up to mark, in turn, after which sing up and down. Leave these scales and build up words showing that if a *consonant* is found in front of *tion* the vowel of the first syllable must be short, but if a *vowel*, the latter must be marked long.

Place the accent upon the syllable in front of the family name. Call pupils up to mark the following words of the "tion family": *action*, *friction*, *suction*, *auction*, *mention*, *nation*, *ration*, *station*, *notion*, *motion*. (Spellers, page 94.) Point

to the letter **c** in action and sing with pupils the stanza in the song beginning "Finding no letter after **c**", and explain that in these words this means when **c** ends the *syllable* and not the word.

Show that words ending in **cious** follow the same rule: that **c** equals **sh**, **i** is silent, **o** equals **u** short and **u** silent; as **gracious**, **spacious**, **precious**. After the board-drill, pupils may copy and see if they can mark these words without assistance. Show that the syllable **pre**, in **precious**, does not obey the rule, as here the **e** is short. Show further, that **ea**, **ia**, **ie**, **io** and **iou** must have the consonants preceding them dotted to show the **sh** sound; as, **ōcēan**, **sōcial**, **āncient**.

#### a SHORT OBSCURE.

Explain that obscure **a** is frequently found in words with dotted consonants; as, **ocean**, **social**, **special**, **crucial**. Dwell upon these obscure sounds in teaching the *dotted consonants*—they occur so often in the unaccented syllables **cean**, **cian**, **cial**. Point out the difference in the marking of these from the marking of other words or syllables. In the latter we mark out the right hand vowel, but in syllables where the dotted consonants are found we mark the first vowel silent. Show, by marking, that the unaccented syllables **ace**, **ase**, **age** have a long obscure; as, **solace**, **purchase**, **image**. Explain to advanced pupils that the rule for marking out the vowel that follows a dotted consonant applies only where the **cia**, **tia**, or **ceous** is found *in the same syllable*. When these letters form separate syllables, this vowel can not be marked silent because it is necessary to the formation of the syllable in which it is found; as, **crustacea**, **pronunciation**.

#### a SHORT ITALIAN.

Mark **a** short Italian in these words: **around**, **about**, **amidst**, **among**. In this connection give the Reading Lesson adapted to these words.

**u = w.**

Show that **u** equals **w** in unaccented syllables beginning with **g**, when this vowel is followed by **a, e, i** or **o**; as, **language, anguish, linguist, languor**: also, in some words whose unaccented syllables are preceeded by **q**; as, **liquid**. (Show **liquor** to be an exception.) Show, by presenting such proper names as **Dwight, Dwyer**, that **w** is a consonant when it helps form the key of a word.

**ū AND ū.**

In presenting dissyllables with **u** long and **u—ōō**, review what was formerly said about these sounds. Print upon the board for daily reference **bu, cu, du, fu, gu, hu, ku, lu, mu, nu, pu, su, and vu**; also, **ru, chū** and **yū**.

Present the following words to show the different sounds of the vowel: **bugle, duty, fury, tumid, stupor; ruin, rumor, fruitage, truism, druid**. Give daily drills upon such words as **Tuesday, tuneful, duty**. Show, also, that in some words **s** equals **zh**. Make scales of **s=z=zh**. Explain that two dots must be placed below **s** when these consonants take the sound of **zh**; as, **pleasure, azure**.

**SUGGESTIONS FOR REVIEW.**

After all the words in the Primary Speller and the Synthetic First Reader have been made perfectly familiar, a pleasing exercise for pupils is the grouping of words in accordance with their sounds. This should be done without the assistance of the teacher.

Ask for a list of ten words with **a** long, only two of them alike; as, **came, fade, pain, rain, day, pay, they, whey, weigh, neigh**: for eight words with **o** long; as, **more, pore, roar, soar, pour, four, toe, foe**: for five words with "wave vowels"; as, **her, berth, sir, firm, myrrh**: for four with circumflex **e**; as, **there, where, their, wear**: for four with circumflex **a**; as, **fare,**

**fair, pare, pair:** for six with o circumflex; as, **or, form, for,** **corn, nor, north:** for six with a broad; as, **wart, warm, talk,** **halk, all, fault:** for ten dissyllables ending in **ing:** for ten ending in **le:** for ten ending in **tion:** for ten ending in **ry.**

As each list is read from the slates, desire pupils to give their *reasons* for the markings: as, **a** is long in **came**, because the word ends with **e** and has a single consonant between its two vowels; **c** is hard because it precedes **a.** Pupils who have had one year's instruction in synthetic reading should be required to bring lists of words in which the second syllables are accented; as, **contain, retain, abstain, &c.;** also, words in **all**—as, **prevail, assall, &c.;** words in **er**—as, **refer, deter, &c.;** words in which **er** and **ur** occur as first syllables—as, **sermon, curtain, &c.**

Write daily, upon the board, twenty words, each containing a different vowel sound. Desire pupils to copy and mark these, and write out their reasons for so doing; as,

“**speaking**,” a word of the **ing** family;”

“**ea** is an equivalent of **e** long. I therefore mark **a** silent and **e** long;”

“**sp** is the key, hence I tie;”

“I accent the first syllable because I find it in front of the family name.”

Desire pupils to select words from their Reading lessons for grouping and marking.

Explain (1.) that **shew** and **beau** must be classified with the **o** long words.

(2.) That **dew, few** and **beauty** belong with such words as **tune, pure** and **duty.**

(3.) That **lose, move** and **drew** are placed in the list with **food, moon, etc.**

(4.) That **put, pull, bush** and **could** are classed with **cook, took, etc.**

It becomes not only easy, but pleasant work for pupils thus to group words in accordance with their sounds. The “marking” of

words develops the reasoning faculties; their grouping, teaches comparison.

Wait until pupils can pronounce readily all the **a** short words found on page 24 of the Speller before you desire them to spell these words from dictation. Be guided by the following directions:

First. Present the new words on the blackboard for marking.

Second. Require the marking and pronouncing of these same words in the Speller.

Third. Present the adapted reading lesson on the blackboard for marking.

Fourth. Require the marking of the same lesson in the Primer.

Fifth. Dictate words and sentences already marked for a spelling lesson.

It is very necessary that sufficient time be devoted to the marking of words. This is, unquestionably, time well spent. Every line traced develops thought. It teaches the child to reason. Every mark and dot has its significance. When asked for an explanation of their marking they reply, naturally: "I tie those letters to show that they speak together;" or, "I mark out that letter because it never speaks at the end of a word;" or, "I place two dots over that vowel because I found **r** right after it."

The same word is often repeated in the Spellers. This is done that pupils may have the opportunity of marking and pronouncing it frequently. It is very desirable that exceptions be dealt with in this way. When a line is drawn under a word in the Spellers, the teacher should print this word upon the board and show pupils how to mark it, after which desire them to print and mark it ten times; also to inclose each word in a circle (shut it up by itself), because it does not obey the rule.

Primary teachers must remember that the following rules have been arranged for pupils of *all grades*. The rules to be used by first grade pupils must be presented as *reasons*, and only used as such in reply to the teacher's question, "Why did you mark thus and so?"

# RULES



# RULES.

Following will be found general rules and directions for the marking of letters arranged for pupils of all grades.

## THE MARKING OF VOWELS.

### ă (SHORT).

Mark **a** short when the only vowel but not the final letter of a word and not followed by **r** nor preceded by **w**. As, **hat**.

Exceptions are found where **a** is followed by **nc**, **nt**, **th**, or by **s**, **f** or **l** with another consonant. As, **blanch**, **ant**, **can't**, **bath**, **pass**, **chaff**, **call**.

Mark **a** short in **wax**, **wag**, **cant**, **rant**, **plant**, **hath**, **hast**, **shall**, **shalt**, **valve**.

### ă = ē (SHORT).

Mark **a** equivalent to **e** short in such words as **said**, **says**, **any**, **many**; and in the accented syllables of **again**, **against**, etc.

### ă (SHORT OBSCURE).

Mark **a** short obscure when used as an indefinite article; as, **a top**. Also in the unaccented terminations **ad**, **al**, **an**, **as**; as, **salad**, **final**, **turban**, **canvas**. When, by position, **a** would be short Italian if the syllable were accented, this vowel must be marked short obscure in the unaccented syllable; as, **compass**.

ăy = āi = ā

Make **ay** or **ai** an equivalent of **a** long in such words as **pay**, **laid**.

NOTE.—When two vowels are found together in the same syllable (except in proper diphthongs) the right-hand vowel must generally be marked silent and the preceding vowel long. Exceptions are found, as in **biscuit**, in which **i** should be marked short, **u** silent and **e** hard.

### ă (LONG).

When any single consonant except **r** separates silent **e** final from a preceding vowel in the same accented syllable, the vowel preceding the single consonant must be marked long; as, **babe**, **maze**; exception, **have**. Mark **a** long when it is followed by **nge**; as, **range**, **strange**. Mark **a** long when it is the only letter or the final letter and only vowel of an accented syllable; as, **able**, **baby**.

### â (LONG OBSCURE).

When any single consonant except **r** separates silent **e** final from a preceding vowel in the same unaccented syllable, mark the vowel preceding the single consonant long obscure; as, **image**.

**a—o (SHORT).**

Make **a** an equivalent of **o** short when it follows **w** and is not followed by **r**; as, **was**, **wan**, **wad**, **wash**, **watch**, **wand**; exception, **want**.

**â (CIRCUMFLEX).**

When **a** is separated from **e** final by the consonant **r**, mark the **e** silent and the **a** circumflex; as, **bare**, **hare**, **pare**.

When **a** is followed by **ir**, mark the **i** silent and the **a** circumflex; as, **fair**, **hair**.

**ar (GLIDE OBSCURE)=er.**

Mark **ar** glide obscure in unaccented terminations; as, **collar**.

**a (ITALIAN).**

Mark **a** Italian before **r**, and **r** with another consonant; as, **car**, **farm**, **cart**, **barn**, **park**, **card**. Exceptions are found;

First. When **ar** is preceded by **w**; as, **war**.

Second. When **a** is followed by **rr** in words of more than one syllable; as, **carry**.

Third. When **ar** is followed by a vowel in the syllable following it; as, **caramel**.

In words of the second and third examples, mark **a** short.

**ā (SHORT ITALIAN).**

Mark **a** short Italian (one dot over) before **ss**, **sk**, **sp**, **st**, **ff**, **ft**, **nt**, and **nc**; as, **pass**, **ask**, **last**, **asp**, **chaff**, **shaft**, **grant**, **dance**, **blanch**, etc., except where **w** precedes **a**; as, **want**, **wasp**, **wast**. Mark **a** short Italian when it is the only letter or the final letter and only vowel of an unaccented syllable; as, **sofa**.

**ō (CIRCUMFLEX)=ă (BROAD).**

Mark **a** broad before **w**, **ll**, **lk**, **ld**, **lt**, **ub**, **ul** and **ught**; as, **law**, **paw**, **hawk**, **fawn**, **tall**, **talk**, **bald**, **salt**, **daub**, **haul**, **caught**; also, when **w** precedes **ar**; as, **warm**, **wart**, etc.

**aī—ī (SHORT).**

In the termination **ain** (unaccented), mark i short and a silent. As, **mountain, fountain**. *Exceptions*, **plantain, bargain**.

**ē (SHORT).**

Mark e short in two and three letter words or syllables ending in single consonants, except such as end in r; as, **met, ten, wet**.

Mark e short when followed by two or more consonants the first of which is *not* r; as, **peck, send, length, bent, kept, test, left, bench, bless, stretch, mesh**.

**ēr (GLIDE OBSCURE).**

Mark **er** glide obscure in unaccented terminations; as, **mother**.

**ē (LONG).**

In monosyllables when any single consonant separates e from e final, mark the latter vowel silent and the former long; as, **here, cede, mete**.

Show that the following words are exceptions by marking the first e circumflex: **there, where, ere**; also, that **were** is an exception, by placing a wave over the first vowel.

**e—ā.**

Make e an equivalent of a long before ign, igh, and, in some words, before y; as, **feign, weigh, freight, they**.

**é—í**

Make e an equivalent of i short; as, **been, English**.

**ēr.**

Mark e wave when followed by r; as, **her, berth**.

**ēaū=ū**

Mark ea silent where eau equals u long; as, **beauty**.

*RULES.***eau=ō**

Make **eau** an equivalent of **o** long in **beau, flambeau**.

**ew=ū.**

Make **ew** an equivalent of **u** long when these vowels follow any consonant except **r, ch, sh, or y**; as, **dew, few, hew, mew, new, pew, stew**.

**ew=ōō**

Make **ew** an equivalent of **oo** long when these vowels follow **r, ch, or y**; as, **drew, chew, yew**. See Note, page 126.

**ew=ō**

Make **ew** an equivalent of **o** long when preceded by **s** or **sh**; as, **sew, shew**.

**en.**

When the liquids **l, m, n, r** are followed by **en** final in an unaccented syllable, mark the **e** short; as **sullen, flamen, linen, barren**: also, after **ch**; as, **kitchen**.

When **en** final follows **d, k, p, s, t, v, x, sh** and **th**, mark the **e** silent; as, **maiden, shaken, ripen, bitten, driven, lessen, woven, waxen, freshen, heathen**. (**Chicken** is an exception to the above.)

**el.**

When **el** final follows **u** or **ew** long, mark the **e** short; as, **cruel, jewel**: also, after **b, c, d, p, n, ss** and, sometimes, **v**; as **rebel, parcel, model, gospel, panel, vessel, level**.

**ī (SHORT).**

Mark **i** short in two and three letter words ending in single consonants, except such as end in **r**; as, **sip, rim**; also, when followed by two or more consonants, the first of which is not **r** (**ck, ng, nk, nt, st, th, ss, ff**); as, **sing, pick, ink, mint, mist, with, hiss, stiff**. Exceptions are found where **i** is followed by **nd, ld** and **nt**; as, **pint**. Mark **i** short before a dotted consonant; as, **condition**.

**i (LONG).**

In words where a single consonant separates i from e final, mark the e silent and the i long; as, **bite**, **fine**, **fire**; exception, **give**. Mark i long before nd and ld; as, **bind**, **mild**; exception, **wind**, **gild**. When i is the only letter or the final letter and only vowel of an accented syllable, mark it long; as, **idle**, **bible**; except when followed by a dotted consonant; as, **condition**. Mark i long in words ending in ie and the pronoun I; as, **tie**, **vie**, **I**.

**i—ē (LONG).**

Mark i with two dots over when it is followed by que; as, **pique**, **clique**; also when followed by gue; as, **fatigue**.

**in.**

When in final is found in an unaccented syllable, mark the i short; as, **robin**, **pippin**, **Latin**, **vermin**, **muffin**. Exceptions are found in **cousin**, **raisin**, **basin**.

**il.**

When il final is found in an unaccented syllable, mark the i short; as, **pupil**, **stencil**, **tonsil**, **peril**, **vigil**, **civil**. Exceptions are found in **evil**, **devil**, **weevil**, where i is silent.

**ō (SHORT).**

Mark o short in two and three letter words ending in single consonants, except such as end in r; as, **on**, **hot**; exception, **oh**; also short when followed by two or more consonants, the first of which is not r; as, **pond**, **lock**, **song**, **lost**, **font**, **toss**, **scoff**, **botch**, **bosh**. Exceptions are found where o is followed by n, st, ld and ll; as, **son**, **most**, **cold** and **roll**.

**ō (LONG).**

In words where a single consonant separates o from e final, mark the e silent and the o long; as, **cone**, **rove**, **pore**.

**ō—ū (SHORT).**

Exceptions to o short are found in **son**, **ton** and **won**; to o long,

*RULES.*

in **come**, **some**, **done**; and in many words of the **ove** family, as **dove**, **love**, etc.

**ōa—ōe—āō—ō.**

Mark **o** long in words and syllables with **oa**, **oe** and **eo**; as **roar**, **foe**, **yeoman**. Mark **O**, and **o** before **h**, long; as **O**, **oh**.

**PROPER DIPHTHONGS.**

**ow—ou oy—oi.**

Tie **proper** diphthongs. Place no mark above these vowels; as, **cow**, **frown**, **out**, **south**, **boy**, **oil**.

**ōw=ōu=ō.**

Mark the right-hand vowel silent in **ow** or **ou**, when used as a digraph (not a diphthong). As, **tow**, **pour**, **though**.

**ōw=ū.**

In **bellows** and **gallows**, **w** is silent and **o** equals **u** short.

**o=i.**

In the word **women**, **o** equals **i** short.

**e=wū.**

In **one** and **once**, **o** is equivalent to **wū**.

**ōō.**

When followed by **k**, **oo** is short. As, **book**, **look**, **took**, **crook**. *Exceptions*, **flook**, **snook**, and **spook**, in which **oo** is long.

Mark **oo** short in the following words, as exceptions to **oo** long: **good**, **hood**, **stood**, **wood**, **wool**, **foot**, **soot**.

**ōō.**

Unless followed by **k**, mark **oo** long. As, **coo**, **pooh**, **bloom**, **coop**, **boon**, **food**, **boot**, **cool**, **roof**, **groove**, **poor**, **goose**, **roost**, **ooze**, **booth**.

*Exceptions*, **ōq=ū** in **blood**, **flood**; **ōō** in **good**, **hood**, **stood**, **wood**, **wool**, **foot**, **soot**; and **ōq=ō** in **door**, **floor**, **brooch**.

$\bar{o}q = \bar{u}$ .

In **blood** and **flood** (exceptions to  $\bar{o}o$ ), mark the right-hand vowel silent and the other vowel equivalent to  $\bar{u}$ .

$\bar{o}q = \bar{o}$ .

In **door**, **floor** and **brooch**,  $oo$  equals **o** long.

$\bar{o}u = \bar{o}o$ .

In **could**, **would** and **should**,  $ou$  equals  $oo$  short.

$\bar{o}r$   $\bar{o}ught$ .

Unless preceded by **w**, **o** is circumflex when followed by **r**. As, **nor**, **form**, etc. There are a few exceptions. As, **ford**, **sport**.

When followed by **ught**, **o** is circumflex. As, **ought**, **sought**.

**or** (glide obscure) = **er**.

Mark **or** glide obscure in unaccented terminations. As, **horror** **doctor**, **pastor**, **vigor**. There are a few exceptions. As, **squalor**.

**on**.

In an unaccented syllable which is preceded by an accented syllable, **o** is silent in the termination **on** when preceded by **c**, **ck**, **s** or **t**. As, **bacon**, **beckon**, **lesson**, **mutton**. Also, in **blazon** and **pardon**, and in **benison** and **venison**. Exceptions, **bison**, **caisson**, **jetson**, **Briton**, **wanton**.

**u**.

Unless followed by **r**, **u** is short when it is the only vowel but not the final letter of a word or syllable. As, **cup**, **hut**, **column**.

**u**.

Unless preceded by **r**, **ch** or **y**, or by a consonant or consonants having the sound of **sh** or **zh**, **u** is long when separated by a single consonant from final **e** silent. As, **tube**, **huge**, **pure**.

$u = \bar{o}o$ .

In the words **bull**, **full**, **pull**, **push**, **puss**, **put**, **bush**, **u** is equivalent to  $oo$  short.

$\textcircled{o} = \underline{u} = \textcircled{\underline{u}} = \textcircled{\bar{u}}$ .

When preceded by **r**, **ch**, or **y**, or by any consonant having the sound of **sh** or **zh**, **u** (long) becomes equivalent to **oo** long. As, **rude**, **chute**, **yule**, **ruin**, **sure**, **usurious**. *Exception*, **sugar**.

**Note**.—In its respelling of such words, the International Dictionary gives  $\bar{u}\bar{l}$  for the pronunciation of **yule**,  $\bar{u}$  for **yew** and **you**, etc.; but as **y** is a consonant in these words, and as  $\textcircled{yoo} = \bar{u}$ , we prefer to mark such words as follows: **yule**, **yew**, **you**. In the unaccented termination **ure**, the International marks **u** equal to **oo** short, when preceded by **s** having the sound of **sh**—as in **censure**; also in the word **azure**. We prefer to mark the **u** long obscure, the sounds  $\bar{u}$  and  $\textcircled{\bar{u}}$  being practically equivalents.

In some words these consonants also change a following **o** to an equivalent of **oo** long. As, **prove**, **shoe**, **you**, **your**, **youth**, **group**, **croup**, **route**, **rouge**, **through**.

**O** is also equivalent to **oo** long in the following words: **move**, **lose**, **soup**, **tour**, **who**, **whose**, **whom**, **two**, **do**; *and in to*, *when emphatic*.

$\bar{u}\bar{e} = \bar{u}$ .

Unless preceded by **g** or **q**, **ue** is a regular digraph. As, **due**, **hue**, **blue**. Also, when preceded by **g**, if at the beginning of an unaccented syllable. As, **ague**, **argue**.

$\bar{u}\bar{i} = \bar{u}$ .

Unless preceded by **b**, **c**, **g** or **q**, **ui** is a regular digraph. As, **suit**, **juice**, **sluice**. There are a few exceptions. As, **suite**, **conduit**.

**u** (consonant), **u** (silent).

Make **u** an equivalent of **w** (consonant)—

1. When it follows **q** and is not preceded by another vowel in the same syllable. As, **quick**, **conquest**, **squalor**, **liquid**, **aqueous**. There are a few exceptions. As, **quay**, **queue**, **bouquet**, **liquor**.

2. In **buoy** and its derivatives.

3. In words beginning with **cui**. As, **cuish**, **cuirass**, **cuisine**.

4. In unaccented syllables beginning with **gua**, **gui** or **guo**. As, **language**, **linguist**, **languor**. *Exception*, **guarantee**; in which the syllable **guar** takes a secondary accent. In **guano** and **guaco**, though in an accented syllable, **u** is equal to consonant **w**.

5. In accented syllables beginning with **sua**. As, **suave**, **persuade**, **assuage**; also, in **desuetude** and in **suite**.

**NOTE.**—After **q**, **u** is merely an attendant letter. It always follows **q**, and in this position, except when it has the power of consonant **w** (as above), it is silent and without effect upon the marking and sounding of a following vowel. As, **casque**, **pique**, **liquor**, **bouquet**, **quay**, **queue**.

When **u** is preceded by **g** and followed by another vowel in the same accented syllable, it is generally silent and without effect upon the marking and sounding of the following vowel. As, **guard**, **guaranty**, **guess**, **guest**, **plague**, **rogue**, **harangue**, **guide**, **guile**, **guilt**. There are some exceptions. As, **guano**, **guaco**.

In the following words, **u** is silent and without effect upon the marking and sounding of the following vowel. **Buy**, **build**, **built**, **biscuit**, **circuit**, **conduit**.

**u=ī (SHORT).**

Make **u** an equivalent of **i** short in **busy**, **business**, **lettuce**.

**u=ē (SHORT).**

Make **u** an equivalent of **e** short in **bury**, **buried**.

**ȳ (SHORT).**

Make **y** final, in unaccented syllables, an equivalent of **i** short, by placing a breve over it; as, **lady**, **gravity**.

**ȳ (WAVE).**

Place a wave over **y** before **r** in words and syllables; as, **thyrse**, **myrmidon**.

**ȳ (LONG).**

Place a macron over **y** when it is the only and final vowel of a word or of an accented syllable; as, **try**, **tying**, **defy**, **multiply**.

**y.**

Leave **y** unmarked and give it its consonant sound when it begins a word or syllable; as, **you**, **yes**, **yonder**, **lawyer**.

#### THE MARKING OF CONSONANTS.

**ta (SILENT).**

Mark **b** silent before **t** or after **m** in the same syllable; as **debt**, **doubt**, **lamb**, **comb**.

c—s.

Mark **c** soft before **e**, **i** and **y**; as, **cent**, **cite**, **cyst**.

ç=z.

Make **c** an equivalent of **z** in **sacrifice**, **suffice** and **discern**.

-c (HARD).

Mark **c** hard before **a**, **o**, **u**, **k**, **l**, **r**, **t**; as, **cat**, **cob**, **cut**, **back**, **clam**, **cry**, **fact**.

ch=tsh.

Tie **ch** when these consonants are equivalents of **tsh**; as, **church**.

ch=sh.

Place a cedilla under **c** when **ch** is an equivalent of **sh**; as, **chaise**, **charade**.

ch.

When **ch** is followed by **l** or **r** mark **h** silent and **c** hard; as, **chloral**, **chrism**: also, in words derived from ancient languages; as, **chasm**, **choral**, **chyme**. Exceptions to the above rule are found in **charity**, **chart**, **charter**, &c.

**arch.**

When **arch** precedes a vowel, make **ch** an equivalent of **k**; as, **archangel**, **archipelago**. When **arch** precedes a consonant, make **ch** an equivalent of **tsh**; as **archbishop**, **archfiend**.

ch (SILENT).

Mark **ch** silent in **drachm**, **schism**, **yacht** and their derivatives.

d=j

Make **d** an equivalent of **j** in the word **soldier**.

d (SILENT).

Mark **d** silent before **ge** final; as, **pledge**.

**d—t.**

When **ed** final follows any breath consonant except **t**, make **d** an equivalent of **t**; as, **tapped, quaffed**.

When **ed** follows **t** or **d**, mark the **e** short; as, **wanted, worded**.

When **ed** follows any consonant except **t** or **d**, mark the **e** silent; as, **passed, helped, pinned**.

Exceptions are found in **wretched** and **crooked**, and when **blessed, cursed, &c.**, are used adjectively

**f AND ff.**

Give **f** its true sound when it is the final consonant of the compound words, **hereof, thereof, whereof**. Make **ff** an equivalent of **f** by marking out the right hand consonant; as, **scoff**.

**g—j.**

Mark **g** soft before **e, i** and **y**; as, **gem, gin, gymnast; exceptions, get, give, geese** and other words.

**g (HARD).**

Mark **g** hard before **a, o, u, l, r** and **ir**; as, **game, gore, gun, glad, gruff, girl**.

Mark **g** final hard when it follows a vowel in word or syllable; as, **bag, beggar**: also, when it begins a second syllable and is preceded by **n**; as, **linger**.

**g (SILENT).**

Mark **g** silent in words and syllables beginning or ending with **gn**; as, **gnat, gnashing**.

**gh (SILENT).**

When **i** is the only vowel in the word and is followed by **gh**, mark **gh** silent and the **i** long; as, **light**: also, when **gh** precedes **t**; as, **bought**; exception, **draught**.

**gh—f.**

Make **gh** an equivalent of **f** in **laugh**, and in some words where these consonants follow **ou**; as, **cough**, **trough**, **tough**; exceptions, **dough**, **though**, **through**.

**gh=p.**

Make **gh** an equivalent of **p** in **hiccough**.

**g—zh.**

Make **g** an equivalent of **zh** in **rouge**.

**h (SILENT).**

Mark **h** silent after **g** and **r**; as, **ghost**, **Rhine**; also, after a vowel in the same syllable; as, **sirrah**, **Hannah**; and in some words where it precedes a vowel; as, **hour**, **heir**, **honest**.

**j=y.**

Make **j** an equivalent of **y**, in **hallelujah**.

**k (SILENT).**

Mark **k** silent after **c** and before **n**; as, **hack**, **knit**.

**l.**

Mark **l** silent in monosyllables when found between **a** and **m**, **a** and **f**, **a** and **v**, **a** and **k**; as, **calm**, **calf**, **halve**, **talk**; also, in the words **could**, **should**, **would**. Exceptions, **valve**, **psalmody**.

**n=ng.**

Underline **n** before **k**, **q**, **c**, **x** and **g** hard; as, **bank**, **conquer**, **uncle**, **anxious**, **hunger**.

**ng.**

In dissyllables ending in **er**, underline the **n** of the first syllable when **er** means *one who*, or *that which*; as, **singer** (one who sings),

**wringer** (that which wrings). Do not underline if two vowels are found in the first syllable; as, **lounger**.

**n.**

Do not underline **n** when it is followed by **g** soft; as, **danger**, **stranger**.

**n** (SILENT).

Mark **n** final silent when it is preceded by **l** or **m**; as **kiln**, **hymn**.

**ñ—ny.**

Draw a wave over **n** to make it an equivalent of **ny**; as, **canon** (a ravine).

**p** (SILENT).

Mark **p** silent between **m** and **t**; as, **prompt**: also, in **raspberry**, **receipt**, **sempstress**, **accomp** and **corps**. In words beginning with **ps**, **pt** and **pn**, mark **p** silent; as, **psalm**, **ptarmigan**, **pneumonia**.

**ph=f.**

Mark **ph** equivalent to **f** at the end of a word or syllable; also at the beginning of a word or syllable unless followed by **t**; as, **phiz**, **lymph**.

**ph** (SILENT).

When followed by **t** in the same syllable, **ph** is silent; as, **phthisis**.

**gūé = g. qūé = q.**

Mark **ue** final silent when these vowels follow **g** or **q** preceded by another vowel in the same syllable. As, **rogue**, **pique**.

**s** (SURD).

Leave **s** unmarked in monosyllables. 1. When the first letter of the word. 2. When it precedes **p**, **t**, **k**, **f** or **th** (breath). 3. When **s** or **es** final follows **p**, **t**, **k**, **f** or **th** (breath). 4. When the first letter of the double consonant (**ss**). 5. In the combinations **nse**, **lse** and **rse**. 6. Sometimes in verbs and often in other parts of speech **s** is surd when it comes between vowels.

*RULES.*s (SONANT).

Make **s** an equivalent of **z** in monosyllables. 1. When it follows any voiced consonant except in the combinations **nse**, **lse** or **rse**, 2. When it ends the word and is preceded by a diphthong, vowel digraph or any sounded vowel. *Exceptions*, **gas**, **yes**, **this**, **us**, **thus**, **plus**. 3. In **es** final (**e** being silent) when preceded by a voiced consonant. 4. Often in verbs and sometimes in other parts of speech **s** is sonant when it comes between vowels.

s—sh.

Make **s** an equivalent of **sh** when **sion** or **sure** is preceded by a consonant; as, **mansion**, **censure**.

s=zh.

Make **s** an equivalent of **zh** when **sion** or **sure** is preceded by a vowel; as, **vision**, **cohesion**, **pleasure**, **closure**.

t (SILENT).

Mark **t** silent before **ch**; as, **watch**, **hitch**: also, after **s** in dissyllables ending in **en** and **le**; as, **glisten**, **nestle**, **thistle**, **etc**; also, in **often**, **soften**.

t—sh.

Make **t** an equivalent of **sh** when this consonant is followed by **ia**, **ie** or **io**, in unaccented syllables; as, **partial**, **patient**, **nation**. Show, by marking them, that these words, in which **tion** and **tian** follow **s**, are exceptions: **fustian**, **question**.

t = ch.

Place three dots under **t** when it is an equivalent of **ch**; as **question**.

th (BREATH OR FLAT).

Tie **th** before **r**, **ir** and sometimes before vowels; as **throb**, **thrust**, **thank**, **thick**, **thorn**, **thumb**; also, when these are the final consonants of a word, or the last letters of a compound word; as, **path**, **breath**, **ninth**, **bath**, **Ruth**, **forthwith**, **herewith**.

**th (VOICED OR SHARP).**

**Mark th (voiced):—**

First, when these consonants are the first letters of personal, relative or demonstrative pronouns; as, **they, their, that, this, these**.

Secondly, when they are the first letters of adverbs; as, **there, then, thus**.

Thirdly, in the plurals of words ending in **th**; as, **baths, moths**.

Fourthly, mark **th** voiced in the preposition, **with**, and its derivatives, **within, without**.

Fifthly, in verbs ending in **th** and **the**, and their derivatives; as, **clothe, clothing, mouth**.

**th AND th.**

(Nouns.)	(Verbs.)
bath	bathe
cloth	clothe
mouth	mouth

(Singular Number.)	(Plural Number.)
bath	baths
cloth	cloths
path	paths
wreath	wreaths

**w (SILENT).**

Mark **w** silent in words and syllables beginning with **wr**; as, **wrap, wren, wrist, wrong, awry**: also, where **w** follows **a**; as, **raw, crawl**; and when **ow** is not a proper diphthong; as **blow, sorrow**.

**wh—hw.**

Tie **wh** before any vowel except **o**; as, **what, when, whit**. Mark **w** silent in words beginning with **whc**; as, **who, whom; exceptions;—whoa, whorl, whortle, whopper**.

**x=z.**

Mark **x** equivalent to **z'** when it begins a word. As, **xebec**, **Xerxes**.

**x=ks.**

Leave **x** unmarked—1. When it ends the word or precedes silent **e** final. As, **tax**, **fix**, **axe**. 2. When it precedes a syllable beginning with any consonant except silent **h**. As, **extort**, **expend**, **exhume**. 3. When it precedes an unaccented syllable beginning with a vowel. As, **axis**, **axiom**, **noxious**, **flexion**.

**x=gz.**

Mark **x** equivalent to **gz**—1. When it precedes a syllable beginning with silent **h**. As, **exhort**. 2. When it precedes an accented syllable beginning with a vowel. As, **exact**, **exert**, **exist**, **exude**.

**y.**

Leave **y** unmarked at the beginning of words or syllables, and give it its consonant sound ; as, **you**, **yes**, **yonder**.

**i=y (CONSONANT).**

In an unaccented syllable beginning with **i** (or with **i** preceded by any consonant except **c**, **s**, **t**, **z**, or **g**) and followed by another vowel in the same syllable, mark **i** equivalent to consonant **y**.

**z=zh.**

Make **z** an equivalent of **zh** in **azure** and **seizure**.

# **THE JOHNNY STORY**



GRAND-PA'S FARM.

# THE JOHNNY STORY.

---

## CHAPTER I.

Johnny Jones was six years old. He lived in Chicago with his papa, mamma, and his baby sister, Bess.

Although Bess was four years old, they often spoke of her as "the baby."

The children's grandfather lived in the country, more than a hundred miles away.

Johnny had been there once, but that was in the winter time, when he had to stay in the house.

But now it was spring-time, and it would be so lovely to roam about in the green fields and to see the fruit trees in bloom. This is what Johnny thought when his mamma asked him how he should like to go to the country with her and Bess.

"O, very much!" he answered. "When shall we start?"

"To-morrow or next day."

"What shall we see there? Tell me every thing."

"I think it may be better to wait and let you find out."

"Well, then, tell me just one thing; something I shall like very much."

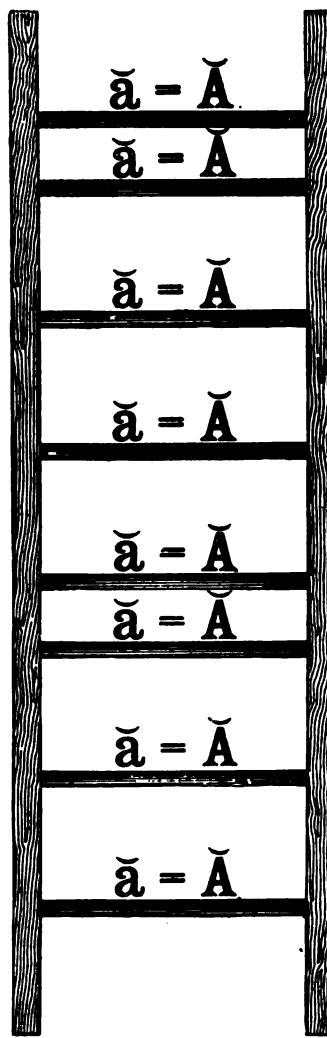
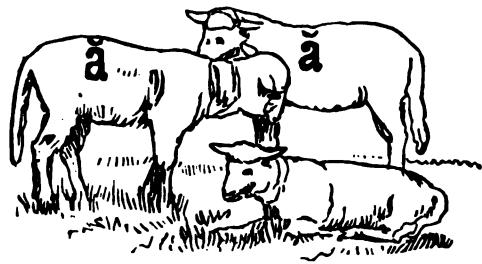
"Then come into the nursery. I shall need the black-board and chalk to show you."

Johnny followed her, wondering what the black-board and chalk could have to do with what he should see in the country.

"I think," said mamma, holding the chalk between her fingers, "you will like the little lambs most."

"What do lambs say, mamma?" (He had an odd way of asking what birds and animals said.)

"I thought you would ask, my son. I think they say 'ă, ă, ă.'



when they cry for their mammas. Look! there are the lambs, and a ladder which you may draw upon your slate, as soon as I teach you how to make this sound."

"I must learn it, mamma, and teach the baby to say it with me. You know I taught her to mew like a kitten."

"Well, Johnny, I think I can help you remember this. These drawings are called letters. I have made this letter eight times. Now, as I draw the curve above each letter, I want you to open your lips and say *ā*. See, I have placed them on the ladder I have drawn. You may think of them as little boys wearing turned-up caps, and climbing up."

"Why did you make them that way?"

"Because I want you to sing them with me."

"But the ladder?"

"That shows that the voice must go up, one step at a time. Here is a picture of what I call a breve cap. Observe that the rim is curved. I shall not draw the entire cap above the voice letter, but just this little curve, and whenever I place this curve above, it shows that this letter belongs to the family of Mr. A Short. All his letter-children wear breve caps. When you see this (*ā*), just think of a little boy climbing up a ladder and making a noise like a young lamb every time he puts his foot upon one of these rounds."



draw the entire cap above  
this little curve, and when-  
above, it shows that this  
ily of Mr. A Short. All

"Does he stay up there, mamma, or turn and come down?"

"You must think of him as coming down in the same way; one step at a time."

"And saying *ā* each time?"

"Certainly, my son. I only speak of a little boy climbing up and down to lead you to understand that your *voice* must go up and down, just as it does when we sing *do, re, mi*, up and down the scale. Now let us sing."

"Please wait until I bring Bess."

Bess came toddling into the room, her little hand clasped in her brother's.

"Open your mouths wide enough to place a finger between your teeth. Keep them open just that far, while we sing up and down."

All this pleased Johnny very much. He looked at mamma and then at Bess to be sure that *her* mouth was all right; then they both sang with mamma, as she pointed to each letter. After they had sung up and down a number of times, she made another ladder to the right of the first one, and printed this letter (**A**) eight times. Then she placed a curve above it and told Johnny that *it* also stood for the lamb's cry. She said that both letters had the same sound; that he might think of one as the little boy, and the other as the grown-up man.

"Whenever I draw two letters with these little marks (—) between them, you may know that they have the same sound. So now we can sing up on the large, and down on the small ones."

Johnny said he liked this so well that he could sing all day; but mamma said he must *work* now. She placed some tooth-picks on the table and showed him how to make the large letters.

"They look like tents with ropes around them, mamma."

"You must take these half-rings and place them above the letters before you sound."

"That means they must have their caps on before they are ready for me."

"Yes, dear, and every time you put a cap on one, you must open your mouth one finger wide and sound. We call these 'voice letters.' Try to remember this. You may call your teeth the doors and your lips the storm-doors, and think that they both open with a spring, for they fly apart whenever your mind tells them to make a sound."

"Would not door and front gate be better in summer time, mamma?"

"Perhaps so. I will leave you to make the



letters while I pack our trunks. You may, also, copy the tent I have drawn, to help you remember the large voice letter."

## CHAPTER II.

Johnny made eight "tent letters," as he called the large voice-letters, and placed the half-rings above. Then he took the chalk and drew pictures of what he had made. When this was done he asked his mamma to look at them.

"They are very nicely made, dear, but they do not stand for the lamb's cry."

"Why, mamma?" he asked quickly.

"Because you did not remember to draw the curves."

"Sure enough, mamma, the new moons must be over the tents. Now hear me sound as I draw. It is the *cap* that stands for the sound, is it not, mamma?"

"Yes, my son; we must place the cap above the voice-letter as we make it sound."

"Do the lambs open *their* mouths too, mamma?"

"Yes, dear, they open them, but they can not use their lips and teeth as we do. There are some sounds which they can not make. Close your lips and say **m**."

"I know why that has not much sound."

"Why, Johnny?"

"Because the gate is shut, and the doors almost shut, mamma. It can't get out."

"I am glad you understand this. It shows that **m** is not a voice-letter. Whenever your lips or your teeth or any part of your tongue help to make the sound, you may be sure it is not a 'voice-letter.' I call this a 'lip-letter,' because the lips help to make its sound. I will draw the ladders here upon the board and let you copy them, after which we will sing **m=M**."

"Why do you make the 'little boy letter' first?"

"Because we shall need more of these letters than of the larger ones."

"How shall we need them, mamma? What shall we use them for?

"We use these letters and sounds in learning words, and always find many more small than large letters in books."

"But have these two just the same sound?"

"Always, Johnny, when you see this (=) between them."

"Then this little boy changes when he becomes a man. They do not look at all alike, mamma."

"No, but some small and large letters do."

Johnny asked if he must draw breve caps over the lip-letters.

"No, dear; we draw those only over the voice-letters."

"When must I sound the lip-letters."

"Sound as you finish each. As you draw the last line of **m** make its sound."

"Are there more lip letters?"

"Yes; the sound that begins the baby's name is another."

"Which, 'baby' or 'Bess?'"

"**B**-ess, **b**-aby," said Mrs. Jones, slowly. "This lip-letter begins both names."

"Oh, I see!" cried Johnny, who had watched his mother's lips very closely. "I saw your lips shut both times."

"Here are the ladders for you to copy: **b**=**B**. Sound as you draw the curve to the right in the small letters, and as you draw the lower curve in the large ones. Keep your lips closed all the time."

"There is not much sound to this, mamma."

"No, Johnny, not



enough to sing; so you may just sound up and down the ladders; after which you may draw this picture of Bess holding out her hands to me as I say, 'Come to mamma, baby Bess.'"

### CHAPTER III.

The next day, Mrs. Jones told Johnny that she was ready for their journey.

"Will papa go with us!"

"No; papa must go away on business. He will go part of the way by cars and part by steam-boat. When a steam-boat is

heard far off, its puffs sound like this—p! p! p! Watch my lips and tell me what kind of a letter this is."

"It is a 'tag' letter, mamma."

"What do you mean, my son?"

"I mean that your lips played tag then."

"Yes, so they did; but it was the lips you see; therefore p is a lip-letter."

"Can we sing it?"

"No, it is just a whisper. There are more 'whisper' letters. You may make these scales, p=P; after which draw this steam-boat."



"This little boy did not change when he grew into a man, did he?"

"Not much; he just grew taller. You may puff as you draw the curve to the right at the top, and think the steam-boat is coming nearer as you make the letters larger; as, p! p! P! When we pronounce a word, as Pat, our lips do not fly open until the sound of a short is given. Be very careful, dear, not to say pu. Just press your lips together until the next sound opens them. Now we must prepare to start to grand-pa's.

"Can we take my black-board?"

"If you wish it. There will be rainy days when you must stay in doors, and then we can sound."

"Please leave my ladders on it. Grand-ma will like to see them."

"Call Jane and tell her to wrap it in paper. We can take it in the buggy. And now bring Bess to me that I may dress her."

It was four o'clock in the afternoon when the cars stopped at the station, where uncle Nat stood waiting with the rock-away to drive Mrs. Jones and the children out to the farm.

Uncle Nat was twelve years old, and Johnny felt sure it would be nice to go around with him and see every thing.

He lifted Bess and Johnny into the nice roomy rock-away and then helped mamma in. As they drove along, Johnny kept singing  $\ddot{a}$ ,  $\ddot{A}$ , up and down the scales. Then he hummed  $m=M$ —the baby watching him all the time.

"Sing with me, Bess," he said, patting her on the cheek. "Open your mouth and part your teeth one finger wide and begin." This was easy for even a baby to do, and soon she could sing the lamb's cry nicely.

"Put the end of your tongue to the roof of your mouth and make this sound,  $n$ ," said mamma.

Both the children tried.

"This is the sound that begins uncle Nat's name. Listen, and you will hear it in these words:  $N$ -at,  $n$ -et,  $n$ -ot,  $n$ -ut. Each time you say these words, your tongue goes up."

Mrs. Jones took from her pocket a small blank book. "We will call this our *Sounding Book*," she said. Then she took her pencil and drew,  $n=N$ . "Remember," said she, "whenever any part of your tongue goes up and touches the roof of your mouth to make a sound or a whisper, we call the letter that stands for such a sound a 'tongue-letter.'"

"I'll draw ladders for  $n$  on my black-board to-morrow."

"Be sure to sound every time you make a letter, Johnny."

"Let me say it, too," said Bess.

She looked straight into Johnny's mouth when he sounded  $n$ , but when she tried, she said "I, I."

"Huh!" said Johnny. "That is not right. You are too little, baby."

"But she did make the sound of a 'tongue' letter. She pressed the tip of her tongue a little farther from her upper teeth. Now you may try to do the same. Here are the letters,  $I=L$ . We can all sing this sound; it is so easy. Let us try."

Johnny placed a hand on each knee, bent down, and looked in the baby's mouth. "Sing on, little Sounder," he said. "I want to see just where your tongue touches."

Mamma drew these two letters on straight lines, and told Johnny to sing their sounds to the air of "Yankee Doodle," and to notice the points at which the end of his tongue touched:

n, l, n, l, n, l, n, l,  
l, n, l, n, l, n,  
n, l, n, l, n, l, n, l,  
l, n, l, n, l, n.

---

#### CHAPTER IV.

How lovely every thing looked when the rock-away stopped at grand-pa's and uncle Nat lifted the children out! The grass was so green, and the apple and peach trees were in full bloom. Johnny did not follow mamma and Bess into the house. He stood still and looked around. Close beside him a big gray cat was drinking milk from a saucer. Just then uncle Nat's dog Gyp bounded past to meet his master. Kitty thought he was coming for her milk, so she raised up her back and said "f, f, f!"

Johnny remembered this, and that night, when mamma was rocking little Bess, he asked her about it.

"Yes, Johnny, there is a letter that stands for kitty's hiss. Here it is, and here I have outlined kitty and the dog, that you may draw them; after which you may print these scales: f=F.



"You will notice that your teeth help to make this hiss. You press them against your lower lip and blow your breath through."

Bess had been watching while mamma and Johnny made kitty's hiss, and now she pressed her little white teeth to her lip and blew so hard that some sound came through. "V, v, v," she said.

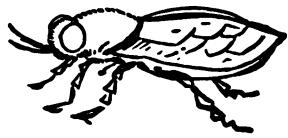
"That is not right, baby. Sound as I do."

"No, Johnny, watch Bess and do as she does first. There are but two 'teeth letters' and the sound which Bess made stands for the other."

"Sound again, then, smart little teacher, and show me how. I will call that a tent wrong side up."

Just then a June bug flew in at the window. Bess clapped her hands. "Do hear it sound, Johnny? It says v." V

"I will draw its picture, baby, and leave it for to-morrow's lesson. Here it is."



## CHAPTER V.

There was quite a wind storm that night. It seemed to moan as it blew among the trees. Johnny heard it just before he fell asleep.



It rained hard the next morning, and when he tried to take Bess across the yard under grand-pa's big umbrella, the wind almost jerked it out of their hands, although they both held it as tightly as

they could. At last uncle Nat saw them from the window and ran to help them out of their trouble.

Mamma had hung the black-board up in their room. She took the chalk and made this letter, **W**. "Those are double tents wrong side up, mamma," said Johnny.

"This is a 'lip-letter,' Johnny. Open your lips the least bit; only wide enough to place the point of a knitting-needle between them. Now sound this way, **w**. Does not this sound like the wind away off among the trees?"

"I think it does, mamma."

"Keep your lips just that way; do not open them any wider when you sound. Here I have arranged these two letters as I did **I** and **n**, that you may sing them and notice the change with teeth and lips:

**v, w, v, w, v, w, v, w,**  
**w, v, w, v, w, v,**  
**v, w, v, w, v, w, v,**  
**w, v, w, v, w, v.**

'And now you may sing these sounds in the same way:

**m, n, m, n, m, n, m, n,**  
**v, w, v, w, v, w,**  
**m, w, n, v, m, w, n, v,**  
**ā, ā, ā, ā, ā, ā.**

---

## CHAPTER VI.

For two days nothing was said about sounds. Johnny was kept very busy going over the farm with uncle Nat. But the third day it rained again, and then he was ready to listen.

Mamma was sewing buttons on the baby's dress. The black-board hung near her. Johnny erased the letters they had learned and laid the chalk beside her, as he said, "When uncle Nat and I went out yesterday morning, we found some pigs in the meadow.

The large gate had been left open and they had gone through from the lane. He called Jill, and you should have seen those pigs run when he said s, s!"

"Yes, Johnny; here are the letters for you to make the scales, s=S; but draw this picture first, to keep the sound in your mind."



"The man-letter looks just as he did when he was a little boy, only larger. Do you not think so, mamma?"

"Yes, dear. This letter stands for a hiss, but not *kitty*'s hiss. This sound is made by pressing the sides of the tongue to the inside of the upper teeth, leaving a small space in the middle for the breath to whistle through. Observe, too, that the letter has no voice."

"That will be a hard letter to draw, mamma."

"Yes; but if you will bring me a smooth, pine board, I will draw this letter on it with chalk; then you can shell an ear of corn and place the kernels on the marks; after which you can draw it better, for this will be a guide to you in forming it."

## CHAPTER VII.

One morning Bess came trudging up the steps, carrying her doll, Jenny, and followed by Gyp. The baby and the dog both breathed hard.

"Just hear them pant, mamma!"

"My doll is heavy," said Bess, "and Gyp is tired because he

has been running fast. He was naughty, too," she added, shaking her finger at the dog. "He caught Jenny's dress between his teeth and tore it. See!"

"I will mend it, dear. Gyp meant no harm. He was, probably, so glad to find you he did not know what he was doing. But about this sound which Johnny calls 'a pant.' Here are the letters which stand for it, 'breath letters,' **h—H**. When you make these scales, breathe out in this way, **h—H**. Breathe very gently. Notice, too, that both teeth and lips are open. Now why is not this a voice letter?"

"Oh!" said Johnny, "because we just breathe out its sound."

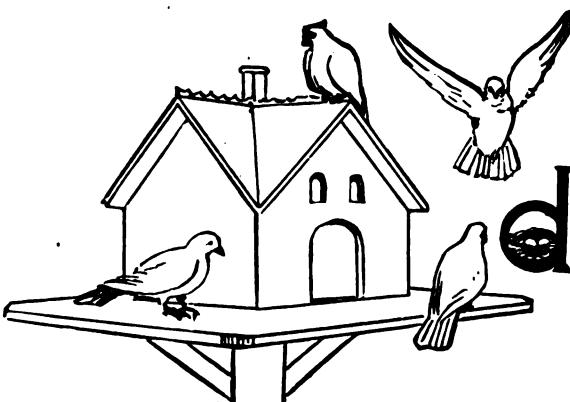
"Yes, that is just the reason. Remember, you are not to sound **hū**, but just breathe out easily and run the sound into the next letter; as, **hit**, **hem**, **how**. You may think little **h** is the picture of the chair Bess sits in when she is very tired. As she sits down she breathes hard, **h, h, h**."

"How much this little fellow changed when he grew up! I should not suppose these were the same letters, **h—H**. Perhaps the large one stands for the tired *man's* pant and the small one for the *baby's*, or the little dog's hard breathing."

## CHAPTER VIII.

"There are pigeons at the barn, mamma. What letter stands for the sound they make?"

"This one; **d=D**. It is a sound made by young pigeons. You may outline these pigeons and sound as you print each **d**."



"This sound presses the tongue up, near its point, a little harder than **n**. Try the two together, **n, d, n, d.**"

"I can scarcely hear that sound when you make it."

"No, you can not. It is, besides, a hard sound to make, but I think it sounds like the young pigeon's cry. As **d** stands for what the young pigeons say, you may just think how those two little fellows will talk when the eggs are hatched. It will be **d, d, d, then.**"

---

## CHAPTER IX.

"I am a little afraid of bees, mamma. I just now passed quite near a hive out in the yard, and heard them sounding."

"Yes, here is the letter, **z=Z**. I call this sound the 'buzz.' Now play you are little bees, and buzz with me, **z, Z, z, Z.**"

"That grown-up letter looks just as he did when he was a little boy-letter, don't he?"

"Very much, dear. Here is a bee which you may draw before



**z—Z.**

---

you make the ladders. After you are through, tell Bess a story about bees. You can recall one I have told you."

"She is a sweet honey bee herself, mamma. I can taste it on her lips."

## CHAPTER X.

"Listen, Johnny. When I say **G-yo** and **J-enry**, you hear the same sound in both names, although they do not begin with the same letters. Here they are, **j=J** and **g=G**. The tongue is pressed up farther back than with **n**, and the teeth come together. There is but little voice, yet it is not a whisper."

"Must I place a dot over each one of these letters?"

"No, dear; only over this one, **g**. You will always find the dot printed above the letter **j**."

"This will make it easy for me to remember, mamma. As this (**J**) letter *has* the dot, I shall remember its sound when I place a dot above this other letter."

"We speak of this letter as '**g** soft.' So, when I ask you to sound **g** soft, think of the dot above and sound like **j**.



**g**

"There is another letter that looks just like **g** soft, except the dot above. I have sketched a frog to help you remember this sound. We call this new letter '**g** hard,' and place a line above. Now look at the sketch I have made, and play you are a little frog, croaking in the pond. Let us croak together, **g**, **g**, **g**. Think of the frog as you make these scales, **g=G**."

---

## CHAPTER XI.

They had fresh fish for dinner that day. Johnny was so busily engaged in telling mamma about the different things he had seen, he forgot to be careful and almost swallowed a fish bone.

Mamma helped him from the table, patted him on the back, and soon all the trouble was over.

After dinner, as they sat near the black-board, mamma made some letters and talked about them.

"Here are three letters which have the same sound, although they do not look alike. Think of what happened at the table when you tell what they stand for;—**e=q=k**.

"What, mamma?"

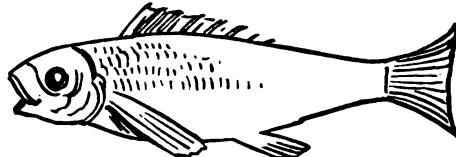
"**K, k,**" said little Bess, and then mamma smiled.

"Ho, ho! I call that sound the 'choke.'"

"Would it not be better to call it the 'fish-bone letter?' This will remind you of the 'choke' which is made in the throat with the back of the tongue."

"Never fear, mamma. I shall always remember that."

"Very well, then. You may try to think of it as you draw this fish.



**e=q=k.**

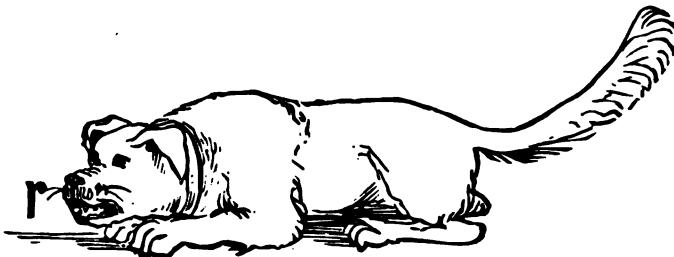
"Just think that the little line you run through the **c**, to give it its hard sound, is the fish-bone that troubled you. You must remember, too, that it was not the *fish* that made this sound, but the little boy who forgot to be careful at the dinner table."

"I shall try to remember, mamma, not only that I may learn the sounds of these 'fish-bone letters,' but because I hope never to be so careless again. I shall print these scales (**e=q=k**) at quite a distance from my fish, or Bess may think *it* is making the sounds."

## CHAPTER XII.

"Please show me the letter that stands for the cross dog's growl, mamma. Uncle Nat's dog Growler is kept at the barn. He is a fierce looking fellow, I can tell you. A strange man came across the field to speak to uncle Nat and Growler gave such a low, cross growl—just this way, **r, r, r.**"

"Yes, dear, you made the sound that stands for this letter, **r**. Growl again and you will feel the sides of your tongue go up and press the inside of your upper teeth. You may watch me as I draw a cross dog, and afterward you may copy it and make scales."



"Let me draw two dogs. The larger one for this (**R**) big letter, the smaller, for little **r**."

"Do so, my son; only make them both look fierce; this will help you think of it as a letter that grumbles, or growls, whenever it is found at the beginning of a word. By this I mean when it is the first letter of a word or syllable."

"What is a syllable?"

"It is too soon to explain its meaning to you now. After a while, I shall tell you all about syllables."

---

### CHAPTER XIII.

"Please tell me how to make the whisper of a goose, mamma."

"Very well, Johnny. Put the tip of your tongue between your teeth and blow your breath hard," said his mother.

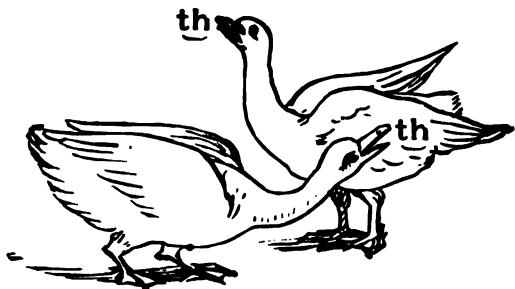
"As I do when I make kitty's hiss?"

"Almost that way; only now, you see, you must blow the breath straight against the tip of the tongue where it touches the upper teeth."

"I did not know the geese made it that way. I wish Bess could have seen Fan and her pups the other day when I went to Aunt Edna's. The pups were eating meat when the geese came

marching along. The two old ganders hissed, and Fan just stood and said, ‘**θ, θ.**’ The pups did not mind it at all. I wanted to get near enough to see how they made the hiss, but, my! that old gander reached out his neck for me and I ran away and hid.”

“Draw these geese, Johnny, and then print and tie the letters that stand for the hiss:



“I am a little goose, Johnny. Hear me,” said Bess; “**th, th.**”

“Ha, ha! Yes, you are a dear little goose, baby; you blew *sound* through instead of just breath. Didn’t she, mamma?”

“Yes; but that is one of the sounds of **th**, Johnny, though not the one the geese made. There is a woolen mill at Stanton—a town not far away. I will take you there some day that you may hear the wheels and bands say **th.**”



## CHAPTER XIV.

"The sound I wish you to learn to-day is what this (**y**) letter says. It is difficult to tell you how to make this sound. If you will press the sides of your tongue against the inner sides of your upper teeth and the top of your tongue (about the middle), to the roof of your mouth, and say **ē**, you will catch the sound: or, if you will prolong the first sound of such words as **y-et**, **y-es**, **y-ell**, you will accustom your ear to this sound. Here are the scales: **y-Y.**"

"He didn't change much after he grew up. Bess, if you look as much like yourself after you are grown, I shall just think of you as 'the baby' still."

"Mamma hopes both her darlings will be just as good and true in after years as they are now," said Mrs. Jones, folding her arms about them.

"Can we sing these scales, mamma? My tongue is so in the way."

"Yes, dear, but you must keep it right there if you would give the sound of this letter correctly."

"I can notice a little buzzing sound every time I try to sing **y**!"

"It sounds like Aunt Edna's spinning wheel," said Bess.

"Does it, baby? As I never saw Aunt Edna I don't know; but I have heard a spinning wheel. Just hear me sound, as I spin round on my toes, **y, y, y,**"

"Run the sounds together, Johnny, and then it will sound just like a wheel."

## CHAPTER XV.

Johnny was spinning round on his toes and Bess pretending to "make him go" by moving her feet up and down, as she had seen Aunt Edna do when she spun rolls of wool on her little wheel, when they both heard mamma exclaim, "Why, John!"

They ran out on the porch to see what had surprised her, and there stood papa!

"O, papa! I am so glad you've come!"

"Bess, too," said the baby, running out in time to be gathered with Johnny into papa's arms.

He sat down and told them all about the pleasant things he had seen.



t, t, t.

Bess climbed up on his knee and took out his watch.

"Let me hear what it says, papa."

"T, t, t," said mamma. "This is something you have not learned yet, Johnny."

"How is it made?" asked Johnny.

"It is made with the point of your tongue. Try now, t, t, t. The tongue just touches near the upper teeth and then jumps back."

"It plays tag, don't it, mamma, just like the lip-letter, p?"

"Yes, very much that way; and it has no more sound than p. Say first one and then the other: t, p, t, p, t, p. As the sound of this letter is to be given for our morning lesson, you will find a watch outlined upon the board. You may draw it, Johnny, while I talk to papa."

## CHAPTER XVI.

"Come, Johnny, and see what I have drawn for this morning's lesson: **x=ks**. Here are *two* letters which have the sound of one; a letter that does not look like either of the others. Sound this (**k**) fish-bone letter and this letter that says '**s**,' the one right after the other. As you sound I will tie them together to show that they speak almost at the same time. Now, run their sounds together as I tie, **ks**."

"Please let Bess tie once while we both sound, mamma."

"Certainly, dear. Here, baby, say **ks** as you draw the curved line under."

Bess looked steadily at mamma's mouth, and then said with great force, "**gz**."

"Not quite, little Sounder," cried Johnny. "I think, mamma, that she tried to swallow the sound of **ks**; it seemed to stick in her throat."

"Well, Johnny, she made a correct sound, but not this one. We must speak of the sound of **gz** afterward."

"Why, mamma, our baby is so bright she never really makes mistakes, does she? She always hits upon a correct sound."

"It does seem so. But what I wish to show you now is that **ks** is the sound of this (**x**) letter. You may make scales of **x=ks**, and *sound* whenever you tie **ks** or print **x**."

"Why, baby, what are you doing," said Johnny, as Bess began to run a line under the letter she had made. "You can not tie *that* letter; do you not see it stands by itself?"

"That is true," said mamma, laughing, "but Bess is right again. This is just what we do when we wish to make **x** say **gz**—we run a line under this letter: so, after you have made your **x=ks** scales, you may make these;—**x=gz**."

Johnny made scales of **ks**, and showed Bess how to tie as he made the "double sound," as he called it; then he made "the

baby's scales," as he called these x=gz, because Bess had given this sound when asked to say x.

"I can feel my throat move when I say gz, as I place my thumb and finger upon it, mamma."

---

## CHAPTER XVII.

"Is Bess sick this morning?" Johnny inquired, as he joined his mamma on the porch where she sat holding the little one in her lap.

"No, dear; only sleepy. She arose too early, I think."

\* Just then Bess sneezed.

"Bring her cloak, dear. I brought the black-board out here on the porch because it is so lovely to see the sunrise and hear the birds sing. As Bess has just sounded for us, I shall make this our first lesson."

"What, mamma, the sneeze?"

"Yes, my son. Look as I point and sneeze twice; tch=ch." Bess sneezed again quite hard.

"Why, little Sounder," said Johnny, patting her chubby cheek. "I am sure I could not do as well as that. Why did you mark out that t, mamma?"

"Because it never speaks when found in front of ch. It is *always* silent there."

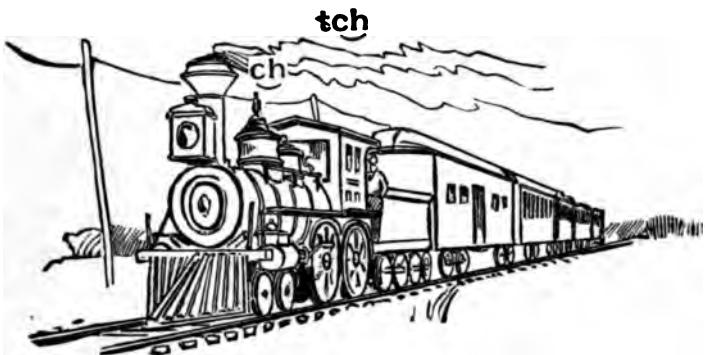
"I think this is the sound the engine makes when the cars come in. O, Bess! let's play that you are the cars and I am the engine, and I am taking you to Chicago. 'Couple' us, mamma, when I put my hands behind me. Now here we go—ch, ch, ch, ch, ch."

Bess forgot all about being sleepy; she ran so fast she soon grew tired. She sneezed again, and Johnny stopped to praise her for "sounding" so well. But mamma said she had risen so early that morning that she must have a sleep after such hard play. So she carried her to the bed room and laid her on grandma's old fashioned sofa, the very one on which mamma had slept when she was a baby.

"It is warmer here, baby," she said, "and as the window is open you can hear all I say to brother."

"Let her go to sleep if she wants to. I'll tell her every thing you say."

"I think it may be best to outline a locomotive for you before you print these scales;—tch=ch. As this may be too difficult for you to draw, just look at it as you sound ch and tch."



### CHAPTER XVIII.

Johnny busied himself with his drawing until uncle Nat came. He was so interested in his work he forgot that little sister was asleep and called out, "Do come, uncle Nat, and see what I have drawn."

"Sh, ch," said mamma, raising her finger. "Bess has



ch=sh.

fallen asleep. The sound I just made means 'Be still.' Here are the letters which stand for it. You may think of the whisper when you tie these letters," she said, drawing gh=sh upon the board.

"But the last one looks like the sneeze, mamma."

"Not quite. Look closely and you will see a little mark under the c."

"Does that make the difference?"

"Yes, it is these little marks that change the sound of ch into sh. That you may remember this you may make these equivalent scales after you return;—gh=sh."

"They are both 'whisper sounds,' are they not?"

"Yes, dear, and, as there is but one more 'whisper sound' for you to learn, I have placed it upon the board. As you tie these two letters (wh), hold up your finger and pretend to blow out a candle. Remember this is not w but wh. We use *voice* to sound w, but only *breath* for wh."

---

## CHAPTER XIX.

"Say 'consonant,' Johnny," said Mrs. Jones, as she pointed to a group of nicely printed letters.

"Consonant", he repeated, "that is not hard to say."

"No, it is not; menagerie is a longer and harder word and you find no trouble in pronouncing *that*. I think you will be able to remember 'consonant' as well, when I explain its meaning. There are twenty-six letters; five of these are voice-letters or vowels. The other twenty-one are consonants; they are either *lip*, *teeth* or *tongue* letters. I speak of them to you by these names because either the lips, teeth or some part of the tongue helps to make their sounds."

"All except 'h,' mamma," said Johnny, opening his teeth and lips and blowing gently upon his outstretched palm.

"Thank you, my son, for reminding me of this 'breath letter.'"

"How many consonants did you say?"

"Twenty-one, and sometimes two of these have vowel sounds."

"Please wait, mamma, and see if I can not make Bess understand. Little Sounder," he added, looking very wise, "there are as many consonants as you have fingers, thumbs and toes, and one more; and as many vowels as you have eyes, ears and noses."

"Ha! ha!" laughed Bess. "How many *noses* have I?"

"Well, as many vowels as you have eyes and ears, and one more."

"That is a good explanation, little teacher," said Mrs. Jones, smiling.

"I know how many five is," said Bess, examining her fingers, her eyes, ears and nose, in turn.

---

## CHAPTER XX.

"In some cases this (a) vowel has what we call an obscure sound. In reading and talking we make this sound glide into the next word. It is the first sound you hear when I say 'a pin, a tack, a book.' You will find in your Synthetic Speller, words classified for marking. Whenever you find this vowel (a) standing alone in front of a consonant, you must show that it makes this obscure sound by placing under it a breve cap, turned wrong side up; thus, a. You will, also, find that this (e) letter has, sometimes, the same sound. Make scales of e=a and sing, giving the least possible sound to these vowels."

"Why, mamma, that looks as though his breve cap had fallen off and the little fellow had no hands to pick it up with. I think I understand this obscure sound—just the least bit of a sound it seemed to me as you sang up the scale. May I make up a story about obscure a for Bess?"

"O, please do, Johnny! A story about a little boy and a top."

"You just *happened* to use the sound then, but you gave it nicely."

"What did I say, Johnny?"

"You said a boy and a top."

"And you observed how lightly she spoke the **a** each time. did you not, Johnny?"

"Yes, mamma. I shall know how, when I learn to read."

## CHAPTER XXI.



AUNT EDNA.

"Bess, dear, I have been to see aunt Edna. Uncle Nat took me. She says that I look like you, mamma, and Bess looks like papa. It sounded so funny, too, when she said she had known you longer than I had."

"She has known me all my life, dear. She was my nurse when I was a baby."

"Well, Uncle Nat took me to see her when we drove to town. We went in the new red cart, and he carried ever so many things to her; flour, and corn-meal, and bacon, a—"

"Yes, Johnny, your grandpa takes care of her since she is too old to work."

"She can hear very little, mamma. When Uncle Nat told her who I was, she put her hand up to her ear and said, 'E?'"

"That is the sound of a voice-letter, Johnny. Let me tell you how to make it. Spread your lips more than for *a*, and part your teeth only wide enough to take in the point of a knitting needle. You may remember this sound by thinking of an *egg*, or by saying 'Ed.' It is the first sound of these words. Make these scales, and, as you place the curve above each letter, sound it."

"O-ho! I see. These little fellows must have breve caps, too."

"Yes, and you must remember, whenever you place a breve cap over a voice letter, this shows that it belongs to one of the Short families. Here are the scales. You may, also, draw a breve cap over each letter. Sometimes this (*a*) vowel says *e*; a line run through this letter makes it say *a*. Make scales of *a=e* and sing, keeping lips and tongue in the same position all the time."

---

## CHAPTER XXII.

"When Uncle Nat feeds the pigs in the morning they squeal out this sound;—*i, i, i!*"

"Yes, Johnny; as you made that sound, your lips parted just a little—about the width of the tip of your little finger. Still, this is enough to show it to be a vowel sound."

"I have outlined these hungry pigs upon the board for our next lesson. Draw them first, and make your scales afterward. Do not forget to *squeal* as you draw the breve cap above."

"When you have finished your lesson, Bess and you may play you are little piggies squealing for your breakfast; *i, i, i, i!*"

"Must they both have caps on, the small and the big letters?"

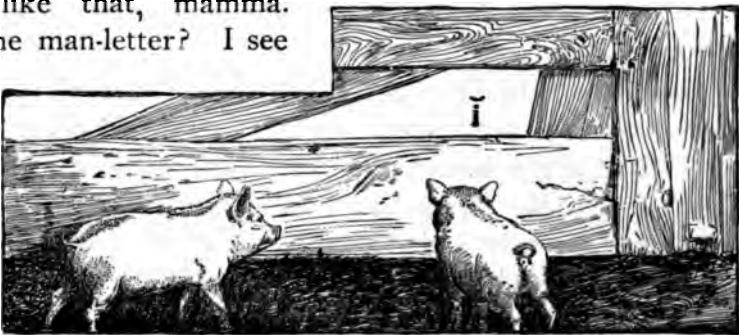
"Yes; they belong to the Short family. Make two ladders and play that the dot is a balloon and the little boy is climbing up after it."

"Ho! I like that, mamma. Must I dot the man-letter? I see you did not."

"No; do not dot it. Just draw a curve over it."

"This vowel (e)

sometimes says ī; by placing a dot over e we show this to be its sound. Make scales of ē=ī and sing, holding teeth and lips in the same position."



### CHAPTER XXIII.

"ō, ō, baby, don't touch the lamp!" said Johnny, one evening, as Bess laid her dimpled hand upon the glass chimney.

"There, Johnny, you made the sound of the next voice-letter we are to talk about. Here are the scales: ō—ō."

"He did not change one bit after he was grown; he only grew taller and wider."

"For this sound you open your mouth almost two fingers wide, and make your lips somewhat round. Try it;—ō, ō, ō, ō. When you want to remember, just think of what you said when you feared Bess would burn her fingers."

"Or of the sound I make when kitty jumps up on my desk. I always say, ō, ō! when I lift her down."

"Sometimes this (a) letter has the same sound."

"Why, mamma, that is the lamb's cry."

"Has it a breve cap on?"

"No, it has not."

"Observe now. I place a dot under it, a. This dot shows that it says ō just the same as the round letter with a breve cap. Make your scales in this way;—a=ō. Always place the sound you have



"ō, ō!"

learned to the left, and the new sound to the right of these little marks. After you have made these scales we will sing up and down, looking right at the letters that you may remember this new mark for a."

---

#### CHAPTER XXIV.

"You said there were five voice-letters, mamma. We have had four. Is there but one more to learn?"

"Only one more of the short vowels. Here it is: ū—Ū."

"He did not change any more than ō when he grew up, mamma."

"For this sound you part your teeth more than for ā; think of a mother tossing up a baby and saying "Up!"

Just then Bess hiccupped.

"I say, little Sounder, did you do that on purpose?" asked Johnny.

"I'm not doing it," said Bess, hiccupping again.

"Just hear her, mamma! I'd like to know what that sound is, if it is not ü. I shall call these the 'hiccough letters.' But Bess, dear, brother will get you a drink of water. It will be fun to make that sound, but not to *have to hiccough* when you *don't want to*."

Johnny was surprised, when he returned with the water, to find that mamma had printed a scale of o's to the right of Johnny's hiccough letters. Over each of these round letters she placed a dot, and then explained to Johnny that one dot above made o say ü. After he was made to understand this clearly, they sang these scales;—o = ü.

---

## CHAPTER XXV.

"Can you remember the sounds of the two vowels we took for our last lesson?" asked Mrs. Jones, upon the day following.

"Ü, o," said little Bess, pretending to hiccough.

"You do not forget, baby. She knows as much as I do, mamma. How many vowels are there, little Sounder?"

"A, e," said Bess, pulling Johnny's ears; "i, o," she added, touching his eyes; "ü," she hiccoughed, taking his nose between her thumb and finger. "One, two, three, four, five."

"You cunning little sister! How well you remember. How many consonants?"

Bess was sitting up in bed, with her night-dress on. She thrust out her little pink toes, stretched out her dimpled fingers and afterward touched Johnny's nose.

"It is that many, Johnny, but I can't *say* the number."

"Twenty-one, Bess. I will place the figures here upon the black-board for you to look at when you pronounce the name."

## CHAPTER XXVI.

"O, mamma!" cried Johnny, one morning, "please come out on the porch and hear the red rooster crow! Bess was afraid of him. She climbed up on the step-ladder and screamed for me to drive him away. Can you show me any letter that stands for that sound?"

"After I have drawn the rooster I can. Here you see the letters."

Johnny clapped his hands to his sides, as if they were wings, stretched himself up on tip-toe, and said: "oo, oo, o, u oo!"

Mamma told him to stop crowing and look closely at the letters she had made; to observe that the curve over double o, and the dot under o and u, showed that all these vowels must be sounded alike; but that the straight line over double o meant that he must make his lips round when he sounded those letters.

"Now, mamma, I will watch the marks closely and crow again."



## CHAPTER XXVII.

Upon the morning following Johnny was trying so hard to make a loud crow, he did not think of Bess who was standing near him, and his right foot came down hard upon her tender little toes.

"Ow, ou!" she cried, quickly.

"I am so sorry, baby," he said, kissing her. "Brother did not mean to hurt you."

"Look, children," said mamma, turning to the black-board, which Johnny had brought out on the porch before he spoke about the rooster's crow, "these two vowels (ow—ou) whenever they are tied stand for the sound Bess made."

"They are not just alike, mamma."

"No, they are not the same vowels, but they have the same sounds. Open your mouth two fingers wide and draw your lips together quickly."

"Bess did make the right sound when I hurt her. And you said 'ow, ou,' when I tried to comb your hair this morning, didn't you, Bess?"

"Yes, I did. You pulled it hard," said Bess.

"Must I always say, 'ow, ou,' when I see these vowels together, mamma?" asked Johnny.

"No, but you will soon learn from the sense of what you are reading, how to sound these vowels properly. Here are two others which we tie together; that is, we try to make one sound when we say them;—oy—oi. You can hear these sounds when I say oyster, oil. And now I want you to remember that these four, ow, ou, oy and oi, are the only vowels you tie beneath and try to sound as one vowel."

"But, mamma, w and y are not vowels, are they?"

"Always, Johnny, when they do not begin a word or syllable."

"Well, you never told me that before."

"We have just come to it. This is the first time we have sounded ow and oy."

---

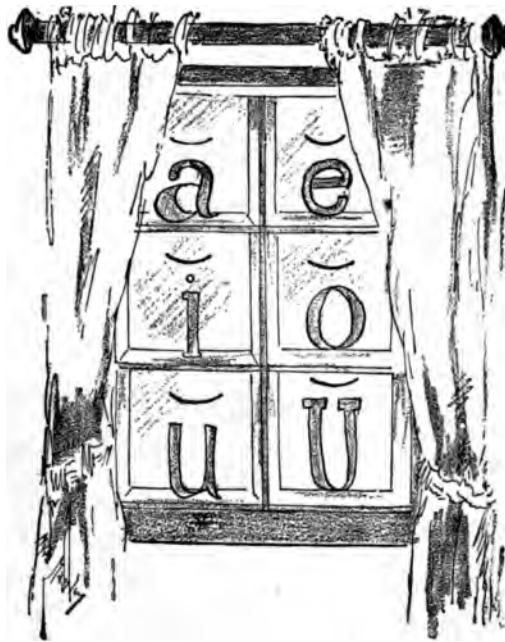
### CHAPTER XXVIII.

"Why, mamma!" said Johnny, one morning, as he glanced up at the black-board, "what pretty drawings! Did you make them?"

"Yes; I made them with colored crayons to help you remember the Short family. Here you see the picture of an apple, an egg, an inkstand, an ox, and a boy that I meant for your uncle Nat. If you should forget the sounds of the short vowels, you can recall these pictures, and speak the names of the objects for which they stand. The first sounds of these words will give you the short vowels."

"I see, mamma. This will help me remember their sounds."

"Here, too, is a short vowel window for you to draw. Draw this window very nicely and leave it on the board that we may sing the sounds of these vowels daily to the air of 'Thumbkins.'"



## CHAPTER XXIX.

"For our next lesson I shall talk about the Long vowels. I will draw the long vowel window that you may compare the two. There are just as many of these as of the Short vowels. Their sounds are so easily learned I think I can teach them all together. Here I have all the scales made."

As she spoke, she turned the board around and Johnny saw each letter drawn eight times.

"Why, mamma, I don't see any difference. They look just like those we have learned. Surely, this is the lamb's cry," he said, pointing to *a*.

"Has it a *cap* on?"

"Sure enough! It has not. It wears a *hat*. Do all the Longs wear hats? Let me look a little closer. Yes; every little long fellow on the board has his hat on."

"You must remember that these look just like the short vowels. It is the macron hats that show the difference in their sounds.

"Ā opens the teeth the width of the end of the little finger.

"Ē spreads the lips and almost closes the teeth.

"Ī opens the teeth almost two fingers.

"Ō draws the lips in the shape of the letter itself.

"Ū has a double sound equal to yoo.

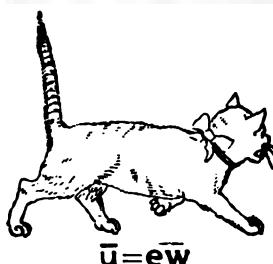
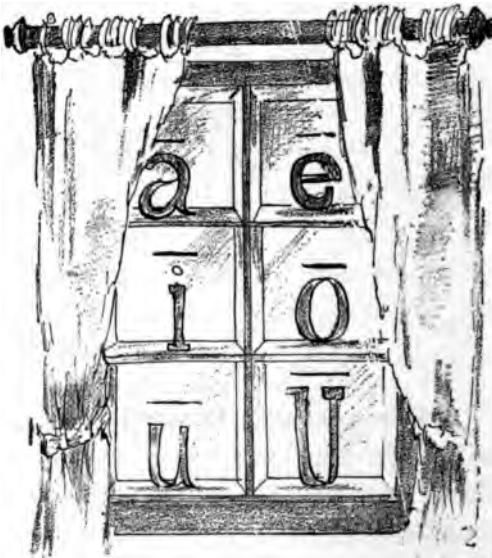
"Sound with me as I point to these letters: ā, ē, ī, ō, ū. And now, that you may learn these sounds, sing with me as I point. But first let me draw a macron hat over each letter. Sing to the air of the National Hymn:"

Ā, ā, Ā, ā, Ā, ā,  
Ē, ē, Ě, ē, Ě, ē,  
Ī, ī, ī, ī.  
Ō, ō, Ō, ō, Ō, ō,  
Ū, ū, ū, ū, ū, ū,  
Ā, ē, ā, ē, ā, ē,  
Ī, ō, ī, ō.

"Let me turn the board around for you to see the long vowel window. We must sing these sounds, also, every day, to the air of 'Thumbkins.'"

"What is that little kitty under the window saying, mamma?"

"She is very young and has lost her mother. She is crying, 'm-ēw, m-ēw.' Her cry gives us the sound of ū long and of these (ew) vowels."



## CHAPTER XXX.

"You cannot guess what Uncle Nat told me this morning, mamma ! He says he intends to give me Fleetfoot, his little gray pony, when I am twelve years old."

"Oh, Johnny, that will be nice!" said Bess, before mamma had time to reply. "But who will feed and take care of him?"

"What a question! *I* shall, of course. When I am old enough to ride *I* shall be strong enough to tend my pony."

"And may I ride him, too, Johnny?"

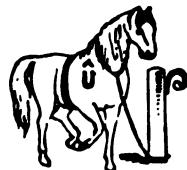
"Yes, indeed, little sister. *I* shall always try to teach you everything I learn."

"I think, mamma, that this was the sound the pony made before Uncle Nat rode away."

Here Johnny parted his teeth the width of the end of his fore finger and said "Ur, ur."

"Uncle Nat said he made that noise because he was restless."

"Do not forget that sound, Johnny. We shall have it in our lessons soon and you may think of it as the restless pony's call."



## CHAPTER XXXI.

"Come here, Johnny," said Mrs. Jones, one morning.

Johnny knew there was to be a pleasant talk, for his mamma stood before the black-board with a pointer in her hand.

"Why, mamma," he exclaimed, "how many ponies!"

"Let me first show you something and I will explain about the ponies afterward. Look at these vowels with the *r* following each: *or, ur, er, ir, wor, yr, ere, are, är* and *är*. When I first taught you about this letter (*r*) I called its sound 'the cross dog's growl.'

"I wish you to think of this whenever you find *r* in *front* of a vowel; but when you find this letter following a vowel—that is, when a vowel is found in front of *r*—the latter has a very

different sound. Say after me **rat**, **tar**. Observe closely the difference in the position of your tongue. In the first instance it curls up until its sides rub against the inner sides of your upper teeth. But when you say **tar** it keeps almost still, scarcely moves at all.

"Take other words—**red**, **her**. Here you observe the same, with this difference; the sound of **er** does not part the teeth as much as that of **ar** in **tar**. Still the tongue is quiet; you can scarcely feel that it moves at all.

"Take two other words, **rip** and **fir**. Here we find the rough **r** in front of the vowel, and the smooth, or glide **r**, following it.

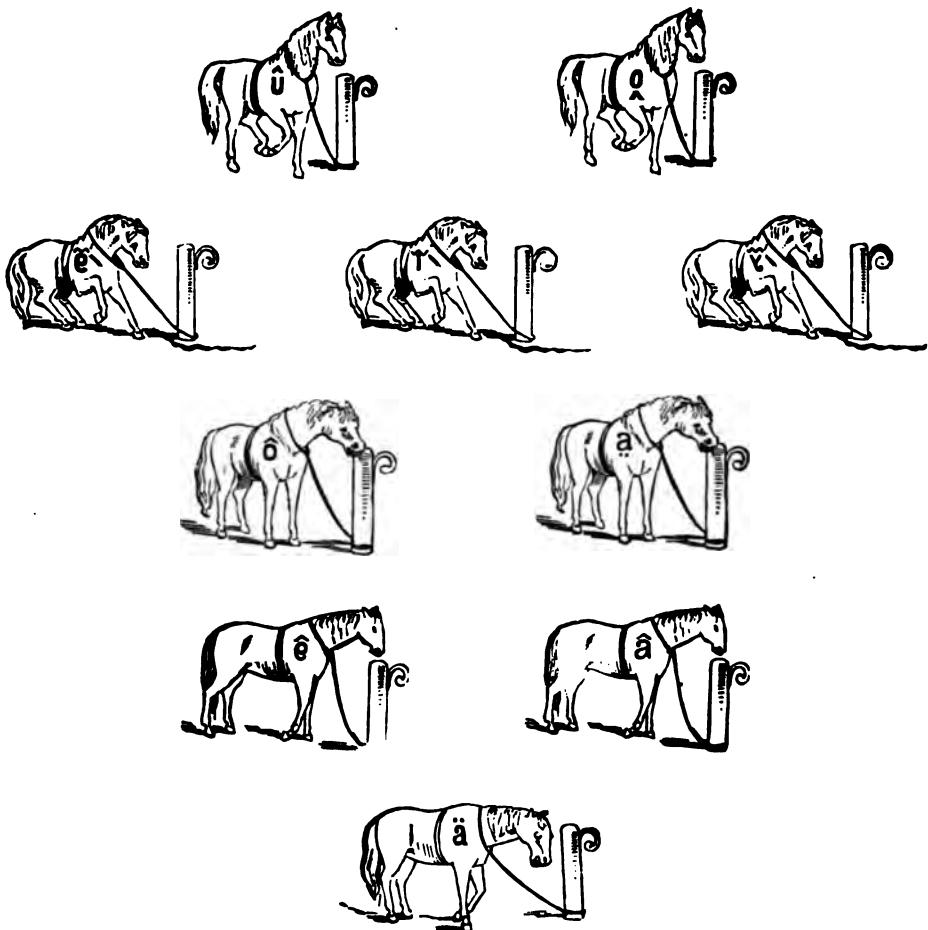
"The different sounds of this letter, as heard in the spoken words, prove to us that it always growls when found at the front door of a word, but is very quiet when it follows a vowel.

"That you may remember this, you may think of these vowels as of different ponies, and of the **r** which we always find close to each, as a hitching post. In marking words containing these 'pony vowels' we must do something very unusual; we must tie a vowel to a consonant. We do this to show that there must be no separate sound given to the consonant apart from the vowel. Generally, we have tied only consonants (as, **sh**, **ch**), or vowels (as **ow**, **oi**); but in the words to which I now refer, we tie the vowel to its **r**. I say to *its* **r** because we never tie a vowel to any other consonant. We do not wish you to sound **h-e-r**, **f-i-r**, **w-o-r-k**; but **h-er**, **f-ir**, **w-or-k**.

"Again, in marking such words, first mention the name of the mark placed above the vowel, after which sound as you tie. There need be no confusion if you will just remember that the tie must be made whenever **r** follows a vowel. To help you remember this I have sketched these ponies and tied each to its hitching post."

"O, mamma dear, please wait until I bring Bess to see the ponies. She may choose, and then I will say which one I like best."

Bess was changing Jenny's dress when Johnny burst in upon her, saying, "Do come and see what mamma has drawn. Here are the ponies tied to the hitching posts."



"Sure enough, mamma, the hitching posts are all alike. The last pony looks as if it might bite."

"No, Johnny," returned Mrs. Jones, "he is the Italian pony. We will think he is sleepy and opens his mouth wide to yawn, because we must open *our* mouths wider for this than for the other sounds."

"But how are we to know the different neighs of these ponies?"

"By the vowels themselves. Can you give me the short sounds of these vowels?" said Mrs. Jones, printing ö Ö (short) upon the black-board.

Johnny cried, "O, O, kitty! Get off the table," pretending he saw the cat there.

"That is correct, my son. Now prolong that sound; continue it."

"How long, mamma?"

"Well, in this manner: ô, ô. Now, when you find o standing in front of r and do not find w in front of this vowel (o), you must draw this little tent above the o and sound as you tie the 'pony vowel' to its hitching post. You may make this picture of a tent several times and say 'circumflex,' until you remember this long word."



"Is circumflex the name of the little tent you drew above that o?"

"Yes, dear, and I wish you to learn to say 'circumflex.'"

"Please tell me again, mamma, why we tie a vowel to this consonant."

"We tie, in these cases, to show that the vowel and consonant sounds must not be separated; also, to help us remember how little sound r has when it follows a vowel; how different its sound from r when it begins a word."

"Say rod, rot. Can you not feel your tongue curl up as these words are pronounced, and do you not realize how still it is when it says for and nor?"

"Why, yes, mamma, I can understand now since you have told me about my tongue."

"Another thing, my son. In words with 'back door-keys,' we must mark the vowel first, and, after tying the pony to its hitching

post, we must continue the tie under the final consonants; thus, *corn*."

"It would seem more like a bridle, mamma, if the tie could be made *over* the two letters, would it not?"

"Yes, dear, but as this is not as convenient, we will just think there is a ring at the end of the bridle which slips over the hitching post and falls down to the ground."

"I have seen horses fastened by an iron weight. I will just think of an iron ring at the end of the bridle that drops as it is slipped over. Must I always tie the **o** to the **r**, when I find them together?"

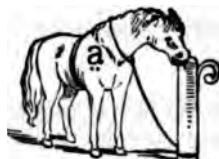
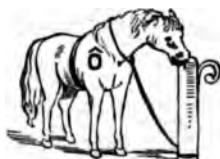
"No, not always. In some words where the **o** is short it must not be tied to the **r**, but we shall not find any of these until longer words are reached. Let us take a pair of ponies to-day."

"Leave them all on the black-board, please, for I like to look at them."

"To-day let us make scales of **o** short and **or** circumflex, and sing up and down; this will aid us in giving the correct sound. I have, also, printed these words upon the board: **or**, **fcr**, **nor**. Observe closely, *not one begins with w*. This will lead us to think that **w** changes the sound of **or**; therefore, the words beginning with **wor** must be marked differently. You may say 'circumflex,' when I draw the mark above, and *sound* when I tie the vowel to its consonant **r**. Since **ar** sometimes says **ôr**, I have drawn two ponies just alike. You may think they have been trotting a long distance and have returned hungry and tired. They say '**ôr**, **ar**.' because they want hay. We will sing the following stanza to the air 'Thumbkins Says I Dance:'"

"Now, little ponies, stop;  
We are at home at last;  
Stand right here by your hitching posts.  
Then maybe I can tie you fast."

**Chorus:**—**ôr**, **ôr**, **ôr**, and **ar**, **ar**, **ar**,  
Hungry ponies ask for hay.



"Ha! ha! I like that. To which family do these ponies belong?"

"We may think they belong to the children of Mr. O Short, because these look like words of the O Short family. In some words the sound of a is just like circumflex o; for this reason I have drawn another pony by the side of this hungry one."

"Do two dots under a make it say ôr? I see it is marked in this way on the right hand pony."

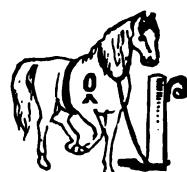
"Yes, dear. It will help you remember this, if, after you have outlined these ponies, you will make equivalent scales of ar=ôr and sing, holding lips and teeth in the same position."

### CHAPTER XXXII.

or=ûr.

"Which shall we have this morning?" asked Johnny, placing the pointer in his mamma's hand.

"We will take Uncle Nat's restless pony and his mate. This is the sound of u short prolonged. You may remember I referred to it when we talked about Uncle Nat's pony. Just continue the sound of u short. Look at the ponies."



"Another pair!"

"Yes, but I can not place the circumflex above both vowels, because this mark (â) above o shows that the sound of o short must be prolonged. For this reason, I place it below when this

vowel is an equivalent of u circumflex. Sound, as I place this mark above the u and under the o, in the following words:"

cur	word
fur	work
spur	worm

"Here, also is a stanza about these ponies which I wish you to learn, after which you may outline them and print your scales."

"Now, little ponies, tell  
Whether your neigh means *No*.  
Don't you like to be tied at all?  
If not, try to tell me so."

*Chorus:*—"Ur" and "or," I do believe,  
Ponies, try to tell me so.

"Now we will sing these (*or=ûr*) scales, alternately."

"What does that long word mean, mamma?"

"*Alternately*, in this case, means to sing first one sound and then the other as we go up the scale; as, *ûr, or*. Watch the pointer closely. Observe that I shall touch first one and then the other. This will help you remember that both sounds are alike."

"And must I always draw the circumflex under o when I wish to show that this vowel sounds like *ûr*? It looks as though I want to draw a little tent over one letter and make the other letter (o) stand on *top* of a tent."

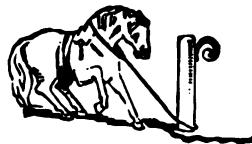
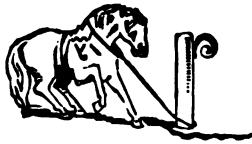
"You must draw the mark in this way when you find *w right in front*."

### CHAPTER XXXIII.

#### THE THREE ENGLISH PONIES.

(THE WAVE VOWELS.)

"To-day I wish to talk about three English ponies. Here you see them tied to their hitching posts waiting for you, Bess and myself, to take a ride."



"I should not trust you or Bess on such ponies.  
They rear up as though frightened at something."

"I have outlined them in this way for a special purpose. Observe the wave line drawn above each vowel. We will think of this as the picture of a little snake. I have also drawn a snake crawling toward each pony. He is afraid of it and makes this *ĕr* sound. Do not part your teeth as much as for *ūr* or *ōr*."

"When I draw this sound out it makes me think of the 'whinny' of a horse, mamma. Did you say the three English ponies '*whinny*' in the same way?"

"Exactly alike. Here are the scales;—*ÿr*=*îr*=*ĕr*. As you look at them, sing with me:"

Three English ponies tied  
Each to a wayside stake;  
Hear them neigh in a frightened way,  
Just because they have seen a snake.

*Chorus:*—*Er* and *ir*, and *yr*, and *yr*;  
All afraid of a little snake.

"Now take the chalk and mark the following words. Remember to draw the wave over each vowel before you tie it to its *r* and to *sound as you tie*; also, be sure to say 'wave' as you draw this little snake:"

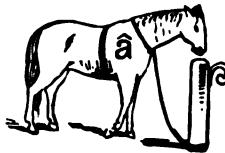
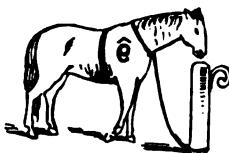
her    berth    fir    firm    myrrh

"What a funny word, mamma—the last one, I mean. I can not see why they print two silent consonants at the end of a word, unless it is to give us some busy work. I like to *mark out* silent letters, though."

## CHAPTER XXXIV.

 $\hat{e}$ — $\hat{a}$ .

“E and a are the only circumflex vowels left. As these sounds are alike, I have tried to make these ponies resemble each other.”



“Why do you place the e pony first, mamma?”

“Because you must sound ē (short) and afterward prolong the ē sound, to obtain the correct sound of  $\hat{e}$  and  $\hat{a}$  (circumflex). It was in this way I taught you how to sound ô and û (circumflex). I first gave you the sound with which you were familiar and from this known sound you learned the others. Here are the scales for you to sing:”

 $\hat{e}r\hat{a}= \hat{a}r\hat{e}.$ 

“Why do you mark the last e silent in both of these scales?”

“For the same reason I mark e final silent in words of the Long families; because it has no sound.”

“But why do you print it with the scales? Why not make the scales er=ar?”

“I print the final e, in both scales, that you may remember there must always be a silent letter in every word in which e or a circumflex is found. There are not many words with e circumflex; as these look exactly like words of the e Long family, I have printed them, repeatedly, for you to mark. In this way, words become familiar to the eye. For to-day, you may take the two sign-board words, **there** and **where**, and the pronoun **their**. Print each word ten times and mark, after which I will hear you ask questions, bringing in a sign-board word, or the pronoun, each time: **as**,

‘Where is Bess?’ ‘Is Gyp there?’ ‘Have the children found their books?’”

“Are these three words all we shall find with circumflex e, mamma?”

“No, dear. We shall take **bear**, **wear** and **tear**, after we have talked about these. There are, besides, other words, such as **ere**, **e'er** and **heir**; but I wish to explain their meaning before you mark them.”

“But these circumflex ponies. Where do they belong? I want to think of them as belonging to the **children** of some Long or Short family.”

“Well, think of these as the ponies of **Mr. E** Long. As I have said, these words look so like the words of **Mr. E** Long’s family, the only way to distinguish them is by becoming familiar with them, which can soon be done by marking, alternately, words like **here**, **there**, **tear**, **tear**. The meaning of the word will aid us in determining its correct marking. If I read, ‘He shed tears,’ I know the **e** is long; but, if ‘He tears his clothes,’ then I understand that the circumflex mark must be used.

“The words of the **a** circumflex family are easily determined —they end in **re** or **ir**; by which I mean when **re** or **ir** final follows **a**, we must mark the **e** or **i** silent and the **a** circumflex.”

“Must we *always* mark out a silent vowel before we mark **a** circumflex, just as we do in the **e** circumflex words?”

“Yes, dear, and by doing this we shall not mistake the sounds of the vowels in such words as **farm** and **berth**, because in these words there are no silent vowels found. I place here, side by side, words of the **a** long and the **a** circumflex families for marking. These I shall expect you to mark without my assistance:”

<b>babe</b>	<b>bare</b>	<b>fair</b>
<b>fade</b>	<b>fare</b>	<b>pair</b>
<b>hale</b>	<b>hare</b>	<b>hair</b>
<b>male</b>	<b>mare</b>	<b>lair</b>

"Let us now sing this stanza about these ponies, after which you may outline them:"

O, what a handsome span!  
Look at their glossy manes.  
Bess, be sure that you sound aright;  
Sound with me as I draw the reins.

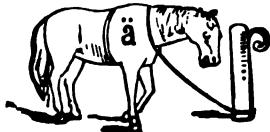
*Chorus:*—Ère, èir, èar, and èrè, and èir.  
Let me tie this handsome pair.

---

### CHAPTER XXXV.

#### a ITALIAN.

"As this letter has no equivalent, I have represented its sound by a single pony tied to its hitching post.



"Open your mouth wide enough to insert two fingers (one above the other) between your teeth, and say ä. The two dots I place above may remind you of two fingers. Keep your mouth in this position while you sing up and down this scale. This is the sound that opens your mouth wider than any other sound.

"You may think of this as Mr. A Short's pony, because Italian a is found in the words of three and four letters; words that look just like those with a short, the r after the a making the only difference. Do not these two words look alike—cat, car? We will call this an Italian pony, as this is the name of the vowel. We may also think he is sleepy and opens his mouth quite wide when he yawns. This will help us remember that we must open *our* mouths wide to make this sound.

"Part your teeth the width of two fingers (one above the other), and say **ä**. In marking the word **far** say 'Italian' as you place the two dots over **a**, and sound as you tie the vowel to its **r**; or, rather, as you throw the bridle over the hitching post. In marking **farm**, make the double tie as you sound. Now keep your mouth open and laugh on **a** Italian."

"Why, mamma! How funny!"

"We all use some vowel sound when we laugh. You, usually laugh on **e** short; Bess laughs on **I** short; Your papa on **o** short and Uncle Nat on **u** short. Aunt Edna uses a consonant in connection with **u** short. When she laughs heartily it sounds like **yū, yū, yu!**"

"Why, mamma, that is the very way she laughs."

### CHAPTER XXXVI.

"Have we had all the pony vowels, mamma?"

"Yes, dear. You will remember that we classified **a** broad with **o** circumflex; by referring to these ponies again, you will observe that, in outlining them, I have not made them as long as the others; they are short and thick-set. This may help you remember the name of **a** broad. As I sound **ä** and **ā**, alternately, observe the rounding of my lips.

"There is another sound of **a**, to which I wish to call your attention. We call this short Italian **a**. Say **ä** with two fingers between your teeth, and then slip one finger out and try to make the same sound. As one dot over **a** makes it say '**ä**', you may think this dot stands for one finger. Keep a finger in your mouth as you sound **ä**, **ā**, alternately, and observe that your lower teeth push your finger up when you sound **ä** and that your lower jaw must drop again before you sound **ä**."

"Here are the scales which we will sing, alternately, that you may realize the change made in the position of the teeth":

**ä** **ā**.

"Is there a short Italian pony."

"No, dear; short Italian **a** is never followed by **r**."

"But how shall I know when to place the one dot over?"

"By the consonants which follow **a**. It will require a number of lessons to learn this, because we find so many words in which this sound occurs."

"You said that **w** in front of **ar** changed the sound of **a**; when **w** comes after **a**, is it just the same?"

"Yes, dear; always place two dots under **a** when it is followed by **w**. There is this difference, however. The **w** that stands in front of **a** says **w**; but the **w** that follows **a** can not speak; he is always silent. For this reason, we may think little **a** is sorry for him and says **a!**"

"Poor little fellow! I am sorry for him myself, mamma."

"You may now take the chalk and mark these words. I wish to hear if you *sound* correctly:"

caw, daw, law, paw, raw.

---

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

"Our visit to grand-pa's is over, Johnny. We return to the city to-morrow."

"How much I have learned since we came!"

"And it pleases me greatly, my son, to know you have enjoyed the lessons. Your papa sails for Europe soon. Upon his return you must surprise him."

"How, mamma?"

"By reading easily and naturally any thing I desire you to."

"But shall I be able to do this?"

"Yes, dear. I shall, of course, ask you to read nothing you can not understand, and you will be able to read the stories found in *any* book as readily as those in your Reader. By becoming acquainted with the different families of words, you learn to recog-

nize them much more rapidly than where words are presented singly."

"Are words ever taught in this way—one at a time? If so, how long it must take, mamma."

"It does, Johnny, and beside, pupils do not become thoroughly acquainted with words when they are taught to read by sight. This marking and sounding carries out a Kindergarten principle. You *learn by doing*."

"It has seemed just like Kindergarten work to me; the forming of letters, the singing and outlining. I almost forget, sometimes, that I am not back in Miss Brown's Kindergarten."

"Yes, dear; I certainly think this Synthetic Method should be considered the connecting link between Kindergartening and Primary work in our public schools. Children are always happy when engaged in some pleasing employment. The reason you have enjoyed our lessons is because you have been kept busy all the time. It has been outlining pictures, or singing, or marking, and something *new* every day. You are too young to realize the benefit of these lessons. They teach you to reason and develop independent thought. As you grow older you will understand this better. Bess has a sweet voice; we must teach her to read by this method, and when she grows older and her voice is trained, it will require no effort upon the part of her hearers to understand the words when she is singing. The sounding of front and back-door keys is as important in singing as in reading. Hereafter, in singing the little songs arranged for this method, let us be very careful to *pronounce our words distinctly*."

"When Bess is old enough, I may teach her to read, may I not?"

"You may, Johnny. Even now she can *sound* as you turn the Rotary."

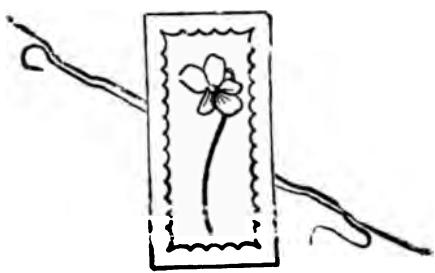
"Yes, and she can outline pictures and print family names."

"After I have learned to color, may I not draw the ponies over and paint them, mamma?"

"Yes, Johnny, if you will try to think of the sounds of the 'pony vowels' while you are at work."

"I shall paint the **e** and **a** circumflex ponies jet black and the frisky English ponies a rich brown. O, how I shall enjoy this painting! And Bess—it makes me happy to think how much I can teach her!"

"And just think how much you will enjoy reading stories to your sister! When she comes to me with an open picture book I can say, 'Go to brother, baby; he can read almost as well as mamma now.'"



## **APPENDIX**



## APPENDIX.

---

### SUGGESTIONS FOR FIRST GRADES.

After all the words found on a page of the Spellers have been marked and sounded, lead pupils to an instant recognition of them by desiring them to pronounce rapidly; first up and down the column, and afterward from left to right.

Print two of the same words and erase quickly, asking who can pronounce them. In the same manner print three and erase; then four, etc.

Follow this exercise by asking pupils, each, in turn, to print a word upon the board, concealing it with the hand. As the teacher asks, "What is Mary's word?" let Mary remove her hand. Continue this exercise until all the words have been pronounced. Be sure to use only the words found on the page selected for special drill.

After words have become familiar, for the cultivation of rapid reading, write a *sentence* upon the board; leave it there an instant and then erase, asking, "Who can tell what it was?" Frequent drills of this kind quicken the perceptions.

### DRILLS IN ARTICULATION.

While teaching the sounds of the letters give such drills as the following:—

Read each line slowly and distinctly, desiring pupils to observe closely the position of the organs of speech as the new consonant is repeated at the beginning of the words. Desire pupils to repeat after you. Require *distinct articulation*:

Ben Bolt bent his bow to hit a mark.  
Kate Cole caught her kitty in the dark.  
Dan Dwight dreamed his duck and drake were drowned.  
Fred Fyfe found a fish-hook on the ground.  
Gus Green gave his gun and game to Dick.  
Hal Hale heard that Howard Hill was sick.  
Jack and George bought Jews-harps, yesterday;  
Karl Kirk came and taught them how to play.  
Laura Long lent Lucy Lane a ring.  
Mary More asked Martha Mills to sing.  
Nellie Neal knit socks for Nathan Nourse.  
Peter Parks put pennies in his purse.  
"Quack! quack! quack!" said Quinton Quimby's drake.  
Run, Rob; run and bring Romaine the rake.  
See Sue Spears and Sarah Symonds play.  
Tell Tom Trent to take the tent away.  
Vesta Vail may visit Verna Vance.  
Willie Wirt went once to Western France.

Let the Language go, hand-in-hand, with the Reading lessons. Obtain a clear conception of the meaning of the author by an analysis of sentences. Never assign a new lesson until the old one is clearly understood. Bring out the thought of the paragraph or stanza by frequent interrogations. Lead pupils to express, in pictures, the descriptive portions of the lesson. Do not criticise defective representations, but praise those of unusual excellence.

---

#### SUGGESTIONS FOR HIGHER GRADES.

(The following exercises have been introduced by special request of many teachers. To those who desire further instruction on the subject of physical culture, we advise a careful study of Mrs. F. Stuart Parker's little book, entitled *Order of Exercises*. Here they will find this subject exhaustively treated.)

The temperature of the school-room should be neither too cold nor too warm. Great care must be taken to avoid extremes. Pure, fresh air is necessary at all times, especially during the following drills:—

At a given signal, desire pupils to stand. Have them rise steadily and quietly, without shuffling of feet, thrusting forward of heads or excessive bending at waists.

*Military Position.*—Place the heels together, the toes forming an angle of about 45°, the weight of the body resting upon the balls of the feet. Hold the chest active, but avoid any extreme, unnatural tension in securing this position. Never tolerate a relaxed or passive carriage of the chest. Correct, at once, any tendency to thrust the body forward at, or below the waist line. Carry the shoulders *back* and *down*. Thrust the arms straight out at sides (on level with shoulders); withdraw energy and let them drop. They will fall into the correct position.

The chin should be drawn easily in, not thrust forward. The eyes should be raised slightly above the horizontal.

Insist upon absolute precision in each of the above particulars. After taking this position, desire pupils to remain thus (perfectly motionless) for five, ten or twenty-five seconds. The nervous control thus gained will prove of incalculable benefit.

#### BREATHING EXERCISES.

(1.)—At another signal, desire pupils to place the fingers upon the chest, elbows pointing horizontally outward at sides. Inhale slowly, through the nostrils, during a given number of counts. Then, holding the air firmly in the lungs, strike the chest lightly and alternately with the tips of the fingers. Lastly, without altering the position of the arms, expel the air, slowly, through the lips. Require an equal number of counts for each of the three steps, viz.: ten seconds for the inhalation, ten seconds for the percussion and ten seconds for the expulsion of the air. Do not permit the chest to droop as the air is expelled from the lungs.

(2.)—Press the sides with palms of hands from directly under the arms to the waist line. Do not resist the pressure, but allow the ribs to yield with each movement, springing easily back into position upon the removal of the hands. (This exercise increases the elasticity of the cartilages of the ribs, thus giving the inclosed lungs greater freedom in expanding.) Place palms of hands directly under arm-pits (elbows pointing outward, not downward); inhale slowly and audibly through a small opening between the lips (the teacher counting aloud as pupils inhale). Retain the air during an equal number of counts; finally, expel the air from the lungs, the teacher counting as before.

(3.)—Place the hands upon the hips; inhale, slowly, through the nostrils. Hold the air easily in the lungs. Expel, gently and *inaudibly*, through the lips.

(4.)—Fill the lungs through the nostrils. Retain the air. Expel, slowly and *forcibly*, through the lips. (Keep an *active chest*.)

(5.)—Inhale. Hold. Expel, suddenly and *explosively*, through the lips. (Do not permit the chest to droop.)

(6.)—Place fingers upon diaphragm. Fill lungs. Expel the air forcibly, noting the inward movement of the diaphragm as the breath is sent outward.

#### ARTICULATION EXERCISES.

(These drills are inserted especially for the correction of defects in the articulation of older pupils. Children, trained from the beginning by the Synthetic Method, do not need help of this kind, as, when the foundation is correctly laid slovenly, imperfect habits of articulation are never formed.)

For making the jaw flexible, move it, lazily, in all possible directions—up and down, forward and back, from side to side. If the tongue is stiff and unmanageable, move, fold, groove, roll and thrust it in every direction. Trill or roll the consonant *r*. Repeat, distinctly and rapidly, words beginning with these consonants: **t, d, r, l, s, z, k and g** (hard). Proceed, in the same way, with the lip and nasal consonants and the vowels.

Give frequent drills in distinct and rapid enunciation, by means of exercises such as the following:

(1.) Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled peppers.  
 A peck of pickled peppers Peter Piper picked.  
 If Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled peppers,  
 Where's the peck of pickled peppers Peter Piper picked?

(2.) Hear the rustling of the banners  
 And the rolling of the drum,  
 And the roaring of the cannon,  
 As the battle groweth grum;  
 And the rattling of the rain  
 That the ringing rifles shed;  
 And the blowing of the bugles  
 O'er the dying and the dead.

(3.) Under his spurning feet the road  
 Like an arrowy Alpine river flowed;  
 And the landscape sped away behind  
 Like an ocean flying before the wind.

(4.) Amidst the mists and coldest frosts,  
 With barest wrists and stoutest boasts,  
 He thrusts his fists against the posts  
 And still insists he sees the ghosts.

(Neither exaggerate nor slight the final consonants **sts** in the above exercise.)

(5.) Trebonius doth desire you to o'er-read, at your best leisure, this, his humble suit.

(6.) Did you? Could you?  
 Won't you? Would you?  
 Might you? Can't you?  
 Should you? Sha'n't you?  
 Had you? Don't you?  
 Must you? Won't you?  
 Sha'n't you? Should you?  
 Can't you? Could you?

(Avoid such reading as the following: "Did jew? Could jew?  
 Might chew? Won't chew?" etc.)

## VOCAL DRILL.

Weak, husky, "throaty" or badly placed voices will be improved by the practice of exercises designed to throw the tones well forward in the mouth. Send the following combinations directly against the front teeth. A clear, ringing, resonant sound will be produced. Keep the voice steadily in the front of the mouth. Do not permit the tone to waver or slip back in the throat in changing from one sound to another :

- (1.) *nee—nee—nee—nee—nee—nee.*
- (2.) *nee—ah—nee—ah—nee—ah.*
- (3.) *nee—oh—nee—oh—nee—oh.*
- (4.) *nee—you—nee—you—nee—you.*
- (5.) *nee—ah—nee—oh—nee—you.*

Happiness, surprise, joy, merriment and all light emotions are usually expressed in bright, clear tones and on a comparatively high pitch.

## EXERCISES FOR FRONT PLACING.

- (1.) I come from haunts of coot and hern ;  
I make a sudden sally ;  
And sparkle out among the fern  
To bicker down a valley.  
  
I chatter, chatter, as I flow  
To join the brimming river ;  
For men may come and men may go,  
But I go on forever.
- (2.) You bells, in the steeple, ring, ring out your changes,  
How many soever they be !  
And let the brown meadow-lark's note, as he ranges,  
Come over, come over to me !
- (3.) Tying her bonnet under her chin,  
She tied her raven ringlets in ;  
But not alone in the silken snare  
Did she catch her lovely, floating hair,  
For, tying her bonnet under her chin,  
She tied a young man's heart within !

(4.) What ho! my merry mates, come on! We'll frolic it like  
fairies frisking in the merry moon-shine!

(5.) There's nothing like fun, is there! I hav'n't any myself,  
but I do like it in others! O, we need it! We need all the counter-  
weights we can muster to balance the sad relations of life! God  
has made sunny spots in the heart. Why should we exclude the  
light from them?

(6.) Oh, then I see Queen Mab hath been with you!  
She comes in shape no bigger than an agate stone  
On the fore-finger of an alderman!  
Drawn by a team of little atomies  
Athwart men's noses as they lie asleep.

(7.) A merry heart doeth good like a medicine ; he that is of a  
merry heart hath a continual feast!

If the voice is sharp, high-pitched, offensively penetrating, or  
“breathy,” exercises calculated to produce a softer, rounder, purer  
quality should be used.

Direct the following sounds to the center of the mouth. Do not  
allow the breath to mix with the tone produced. (Tell the pupil to  
imagine the tone a silver wire, and the unvocalized breath a mist  
surrounding the wire. We desire the wire without the mist, *i. e.*,  
the pure tone without the audibly escaping breath.)

- (1.) *ah—la—ō—ah.*
- (2.) *ō—aw—la—aw.*
- (3.) *oo—aw—ō—la.*
- (4.) *la—do—fa—la.*

Work for soft, rich, soulful tones, wholly devoid of the harsh,  
metallic quality the pupil is striving to overcome.

#### EXERCISES FOR CENTER PLACING.

- (1.) O well for the fisherman's boy  
That he shouts with his sister at play!  
O well for the sailor lad  
That he sings in his boat on the bay!  
And the stately ships go on  
To their haven under the hill;  
But O, for the touch of a vanished hand,  
And the sound of a voice that is still!

(2.)

Then read from the treasured volume  
 The poem of thy choice;  
 And lend to the rhyme of the writer  
 The beauty of thy voice.  
 And the night shall be filled with music  
 And the cares that infest the day  
 Shall fold their tents, like the Arabs,  
 And as silently steal away.

(3.) In the dim and quiet chamber there's an empty cradle bed,  
 With the print upon the pillow of a baby's shining head;  
 'Tis a fair and dainty cradle; downy, soft, the pillows white;  
 But, within the blankets folded, lies no little form to-night!

(4.)

Fresh as the first beam glittering on a sail  
 That brings our friends up from the under-world;  
 Sad as the last which reddens over one  
 That sinks with all we love below the verge.  
 So sad, so fresh, the days that are no more!

(5.)

The face, which, duly as the sun,  
 Rose up for me, with life begun,  
 To mark all bright hours of the day  
 With daily love, is dimmed away!  
 And yet my days go on, go on.

(6.) O sweet and strange it seems to me that, ere this day is done,  
 The voice that now is speaking may be beyond the sun;  
 Forever and forever with those just souls and true!  
 And what is life that we should moan? Why make we such ado?

## EMPHASIS.

The office of emphasis is to discriminate the idea contained in a certain word from all other related ideas: hence, emphasis must be placed upon the word containing the new idea: as,

"I said an *elder* soldier, not a better."

"For there shall come a *mightier* blast;  
 There shall be a *darker* day."

"And this *man* is now become a *God*."

As a rule, do not emphasize the same word or idea when repeated in the same connection; as,

"None but the *brave*;  
*None* but the brave;  
 None *but* the brave deserve the fair."

Observe the change of emphasis in the following speech from the "Merchant of Venice," after the word "ring" has been introduced and emphasized:

If you did know to *whom* I gave the ring,  
 If you did know *for whom* I gave the ring,  
 And would conceive for *what* I gave the ring,  
 And how unwillingly I *left* the ring,  
 Where naught would be accepted *but* the ring  
 You would *abate* the strength of your displeasure.

Exceptions to the above rule are found in sentences where the emphatic word is repeated for additional emphasis; as,

"*Charge*, Chester, **CHARGE!** *On*, Stanley, **ON!**"  
 "I denied you *not*." "You *did*." "I did *not*."  
 "Seems, madam, nay, it *is*; I know not *seems*."

Over emphasis weakens a sentence. Emphasis should be deferred and concentrated, rather than multiplied; as,

"Days, months, years and *ages* shall circle away."  
 "Charity beareth all things, believeth all things, hopeth all things,  
*endureth* all things."

"The tear,  
 The groan, the knell, the pall, the bier,  
 And all we know, or dream, or *fear*  
 Of agony, are thine."

Incorrect emphasis often changes entirely the meaning of a sentence; as,

"Is a crow a large black-bird?" "No; a crow is a large black *bird*." "Did you ever see a horse fly through a window?" "No; but I have seen a horse-fly through a window."

## RISING AND FALLING INFLECTIONS.

After pauses of incomplete sense the voice should, as a rule, take a slight, upward inflection, viz.:

“These are’, at best’, however’, but melancholy sounds.”

“To charm’, to win’, to arouse’, to calm’, to warn’, to enlighten’, to persuade—this is the function of the orator.”

“A primrose by the river’s brim’,  
A yellow primrose was to him,  
And it was nothing more.”

“I will accept neither this’, nor that.”

“If ye know that the object is good’, then seek it.”

(When the parts of a sentence are closely connected, a mere pause should be used instead of the upward inflection; as,

“All night the dreadless angel, unpursued  
Through heaven’s wide champaign, held his way.”

“Suddenly the noise of hoofs upon the turf outside became audible to the startled men.”)

Guard against the falling inflection, after the participle **saying** and the transitive verb **said**. How often we hear “And He taught them saying’,” or, “And He answered and said’;” the voice indicating a completion of the sense before an intimation of what He said has been given.

The rising inflection should be used, as a rule, after words of address: as, “Hamlet’, thou hast thy father much offended;” “For Heaven’s sake, Hubert’, let me not be bound!”; “O pardon me, thou bleeding piece of earth’!”; “Friends’, Romans’, country-men’, lend me your ears.”

When the sense is completed, the voice, as a rule, takes a downward inflection; as,

“How high you lift your heads into the sky’!

How huge you are’, how mighty’, and how free’.”

“What a piece of work is man’; how noble in reason’; how infinite in faculties’; in form and moving how express and admirable’; in action how like an angel’; in apprehension how like a God’!”

"The brooks have a sullen and muffled murmur under their frozen surface'; the ice in the distant river heaves up with the swell of the current', and falls again to the bank with a prolonged echo'."

"The earth is the Lord's', and the fullness thereof'; the world', and they that dwell therein'. For He hath founded it upon the seas', and established it upon the floods'."

In definite interrogatives (questions which require the answer *yes or no*, or their equivalents), the voice continues to rise from the beginning to the end of the sentence; as, "Will ye give it up to slaves?"

"Have you not heard the poets tell  
Of the dainty Baby Belle?"

In a series of definite interrogatives the voice should **rise a little higher** with each successive question; as,

"And do you now put on your best attire?  
And do you now cull out a holiday?  
And do you now strew flowers in his way  
That comes in triumph over Pompey's blood?"

In some cases the definite interrogative takes a falling inflection; as, "Will you go? I ask you, will you go?"

In indefinite interrogatives (questions which can not be answered by *yes or no*, or their equivalents) the voice continues to fall from the beginning to the end of the sentence; as,

"How is it that the clouds still hang on you?"  
"What cause withdraws you then to mourn for him?"  
"To whom shall we go?"

In a series of indefinite interrogatives the voice should fall a little lower with each successive question; as,

"Wherefore rejoice? What conquest brings he home?  
What tributaries follow him to Rome  
To grace in captive bonds his chariot wheels?"

When a repetition of what has been asked before is implied, the indefinite interrogative sometimes takes a rising inflection; as,

“What’s your name?” “What’s my name? Why, John.”

(When a strong or peculiar emphasis is suggested, whether used to express surprise, scorn, anger, inquiry, vehemence or any unusual condition, an inflection, *contrary to the general rule*, is almost always the result.)

### PROSODY.

Prosody denotes the musical tone or melody which accompanies speech. It is that part of grammar which treats of the structure of poetical composition. It requires a more measured arrangement of words than prose. This arrangement is called versification.

The harmony of verse depends upon the regular recurrence, at fixed intervals, of syllables of a certain quantity. A syllable is long or short according to the time occupied in pronouncing it. It is accented or unaccented as stress of voice is placed upon it in pronunciation; as, *deter, injury*. A careful study of versification will lead pupils to a higher appreciation of the best literature.

A Foot is a division of a verse, consisting of two or three syllables.

The most common and dignified verse in English poetry consists of five Iambic feet, or ten syllables; as,

Perhaps in this neglected spot is laid  
Some heart once pregnant with celestial fire;  
Hands that the rod of empire might have swayed,  
Or waked to ecstasy the living lyre.

The Heroic measure has a grave and majestic march, well suited to heroic argument, especially if it be not fettered by rhyme; as,

How sweet the moonlight sleeps upon this bank!  
Here will we sit and let the sounds of music  
Creep in our ears; soft stillness and the night  
Become the touches of sweet harmony.

Iambic verse is sometimes shortened by cutting off one Iambus; as,

Thou art	O God	the life	and light
Of all	this won	drous world	we see!
Its glow	by day	its smile	by night
Are but	reflec	tions caught	from Thee.

The four-lined stanza of Psalmody generally consists of alternate Iambic verses of four and three feet; as,

Lord, Thou didst love Jerusalem;
Once she was all Thine own.
Her love Thy fairest heritage,
Her power Thy glory's throne.

A half foot is often added to an Iambic for the sake of variety; as,

Waft, waft, ye winds, the story
And you, ye waters roll,
Till, like a sea of glory
It spreads from pole to pole.

#### RHYME AND BLANK VERSE.

Rhyme is the name by which we distinguish **verses** that are closed by final syllables of similar sound; as,

Hope for a season, bade the world farewell,
And Freedom shrieked when Kosciusko fell.

This similarity of sound is not found in the final syllables of blank verse. The habit of giving the falling inflection to the final words in the lines of blank verse may be corrected by writing the poem in prose before its reading is attempted. Frequent drills in scanning the lines will lead pupils to make the pauses requisite to distinguish blank verse from prose.

An Alexandrine line consists of six feet or twelve syllables. It is occasionally introduced into heroic verse at the close of a passage; as,

Time writes no wrinkle on thine azure brow,
Such as Creation's dawn beheld, thou rollest now.

The subject of versification has been merely touched upon with a hope that teachers may lead pupils of higher grades into a careful study of it. As soon as words are made familiar and reading becomes easy, the higher plane of Melody should be reached. Remember that the voice of song is not sweeter than the voice of eloquence and that, as Richard Wagner has said, "the oldest, purest and most musical instrument; the instrument to which, alone, our music owes its existence, is *the human voice.*"

---

## SUPPLEMENT.

The following, found in a school journal of recent date, admirably explains the result of presenting the word "as a whole" in primary grades:

"There is quite a general complaint among teachers, principals and superintendents "that pupils in the higher grades are not able to read with ease and expression; they have "so little mastery over words that an exercise in reading becomes a laborious effort at "word-calling. Pupils read, usually, very well through the first three readers, according to "our present standard of reading in these grades. But the trouble begins in the fourth "reader, and by the time the class is in the fifth, the reading recitation is torture to the "teacher, and a hateful task to the pupil. There can be no good reading without the "ability to call words readily, and it may be well to consider whether the methods of "teaching primary reading, and which seem productive of such good results in the primary "grades, are not at fault in preparing the pupil for the advanced reading. We are in- "clined to think the inability of pupils in the higher grades to call words is the legitimate "outgrowth of the teaching of the word method. By this method the word is presented to "the child as a whole, and the teacher either tells the child the word, or by skillful ques- "tioning leads him to use the word. Later, when phonics have been introduced, the "teacher writes the new and difficult words on the blackboard and marks them. The "general results of these methods on the mind of the pupil are about the same. He soon "learns to think he can do nothing with a new word without the help of the teacher in some "way. While he should be learning independence in making out his words, he has "learned dependence, and his dependence increases with the increase of difficulties."

---

It has been said of our method that it gives the first grade teacher too much to do. There is no necessity for this. It merely proves one of two things: either that she attempts more than is expected of her, or that, because of her ignorance of phonics, she is forced to study each lesson before she presents it to her class. If the latter, the effort requisite to a clear comprehension of the method will yield ample compensation from the fact that the work, when thoroughly understood, becomes easy—requires no such effort as word method, where individual words must be presented through all the grades. The method should be as carefully studied by second and third grade teachers as by first. The former should be thoroughly prepared to carry on, faithfully, the drills in articulation and independent pronunciation begun in the first grades. Added to this, independence in placing the accent mark should be taught. This is a new step, because monsyllables, only, are used in the classifications presented for first grades.

## A NOTE TO TEACHERS.

During the first month or six weeks you should proceed very slowly, making the children perfectly familiar with each lesson before another is given. This slow work at first will prove a great benefit afterward and prevent the necessity of going back and doing over the first work. Read your Manual carefully and understand the language—just what each sentence means. After following its directions faithfully, you will be astonished at the results in the course of two or three months' work.

Before presenting the family names found on the 32d page of Speller, make pupils familiar with the sound of **e** short. For this purpose use the stencil picture of Aunt Edna. This will be the only new sound introduced until the 35th page of the Speller is reached.

Primer classes should pass over all the words found on page 35, except those of the first column. The Primer lessons do not correspond with these words, hence the latter should be left for First Reader classes.

Before presenting the family names in **i** short, pupils should learn the sound of this vowel by means of its stencil picture. This is the only new sound they must learn until they have marked all the **i** short words in the Speller and the words of the corresponding reading lesson in Primer.

After the sound of **o** short has been taught and pupils learn, through the songs, that **c** and **g** must be marked hard before this vowel, they will be prepared to mark all the **o** short words, in both Speller and Primer lessons.

The third and fourth columns of words found on page 43 of Speller should be left for First Reader classes.

The only new sound to be taught when the 44th page of the Speller is reached is **u** short. After it has been presented through its stencil picture, pupils should be able to mark, without the assistance of the teacher, all the **u** short words found on pages 44, 45, 46, the first column of words on page 47 of Speller and the words of the corresponding Primer lesson, leaving the second, third and fourth columns of page 47 for First Reader classes.

There is no objection to script after pupils have been taught the sounds of the letters from the printed forms; but there is an objection to the presentation of both forms at the same time; and a most serious objection to the common practice of requiring pupils to devote so much time to copying. It is from the printed page we expect the child to read and study and it is the printed word he should first be taught to recognize.

Those who prefer to teach penmanship during the first months, should give their pupils family names and scales to copy from the black-board. Let the copying of words come later.

We have often been requested to give teachers some idea of the time it should take to accomplish certain stages in the development of this work. It is impossible to give any very definite idea on this point, as so much depends both upon the teacher and her class of children. Many teachers find no difficulty in familiarizing their pupils with the sounds of **a** short and the consonant sounds during the first two weeks of school. If the class has finished the thirty-first page of the Speller (pronouncing rapidly), together with the adapted reading lessons, at the close of the first ten weeks the teacher may feel very well satisfied with her work. If the forty-eighth page in the Speller, together with the accompanying lessons, have been completed by Christmas the class has made good progress.

For Second Reader work give drills upon dissyllables ending in **ing**, and show that the accent must not be placed upon this family name. If not upon **ing** then upon the first syllable. After this explanation have pupils mark, accent and pronounce all the words found on pages 87 and 88 of Speller, and then read the first four lessons in Second Reader.

Give a drill upon dissyllables ending in **le** and follow this with the marking and pronouncing of the words found upon pages 89 and 90 of Speller. Then have pupils read the lessons in Second Reader in which the **le** words occur. Continue in this alternate use of Speller and Second Reader until all except the last four pages of the Speller have been marked and pronounced. These last pages are to be used in connection with Third Reader lessons.

Insist upon the falling inflection in the pronunciation of the words at the beginning of reading lessons. It is **handing**, not **handing'**; **apple**, not **apple'**.

New classifications must be dealt with as pupils are promoted. A careful study of the notes for the Third Reader will enable the third grade teacher to present the prefixes and suffixes in the order of their arrangement. The pupils should carefully prepare the new words before their pronunciation is attempted. Disinclination upon the part of teachers to carry on the Synthetic work because of the study it involves should not be accepted as an apology for its discontinuance in higher grades. No greater boon than a pure pronunciation can be conferred upon the rising generation. This can never be secured while teachers are willing to remain in ignorance of the accepted rules of Orthoepy.

Teachers should realize the necessity of making pupils acquainted with prefixes and suffixes. They should learn to recognize these by sight in the same manner as they were taught to recognize the keys of words; they should be reminded that the same general rules apply to syllables as to words; for this reason the prefixes **ab**, **ac**, **ad**, etc., must have the breve placed above the vowel. They must expect to mark the vowel short if **r** is not the final consonant, just as they did the "family names" of the short vowels. They must lead pupils to see that the accent must not be placed upon the prefix except in cases where we wish to convert the verb into a noun or an adjective; as, **pre'fix**, **prefix'**.

Pupils should be made familiar with suffixes in the same way and led to see that the accent must not be placed upon these.

The third grade teacher should understand that her work is as important as that of the first and second grades. The black-board drills should be as thorough, and as much care should be required in the placing of the diacritical and accent marks as in second grades.

New words must be presented as the child's vocabulary enlarges, and these words should be introduced in a methodical way.

---

**TEST QUESTIONS FOR PUPILS BEFORE BEGINNING  
THIRD GRADE WORK.**

- 1.—Write, diacritically, all the sounds of **a**, and, after each sound, write all its equivalents.
- 2.—Write, diacritically, all the sounds of **e**, and, after each sound, write all its equivalents.
- 3.—Write, diacritically, all the sounds of **i**, and, after each sound, write all its equivalents.
- 4.—Write, diacritically, all the sounds of **o**, and, after each sound, write all its equivalents.
- 5.—Write, diacritically, all the sounds of **u**, and, after each sound, write all its equivalents.
- 6.—Write the general rule for the correct placing of diacritical marks above the short vowels.
- 7.—Write the general rule for placing the diacritical marks over the long vowels.
- 8.—What diacritical mark must we place above **u** when it is followed by **r**? Write some exceptions to this rule.
- 9.—What when followed by **rr**? Some exceptions.
- 10.—When and how must we mark **c** hard?
- 11.—When and how must we mark **c** soft?
- 12.—When and how must we mark **g** hard?
- 13.—When and how must we mark **g** soft? Write ten exceptions to this rule.
- 14.—Write the aspirates, the vocals, the sub-vocals.
- 15.—Tell why **s** has its true sound in the following words: **Caps, vests, desks, quaffs.**
- 16.—Tell why **s** is an equivalent of **z** in the following: **Clams, fans, cars, cakes, rains, cows, boys, toes, days.**
- 17.—Give the aspirates corresponding to the sub-vocals **b, d, v, z.**
- 18.—Tell why **passed** is pronounced as if spelled **past**; **stepped** as if spelled **stept**; **knocked** as if spelled **knockt**; **hushed** as if spelled **husht**.
- 19.—What consonant changes the sounds of nearly all the vowels that precede it? Give examples.
- 20.—What effect has **w** upon the sound of **a** in three and four letter words beginning with **wa**? Give examples.
- 21.—Why do we not mark **a** with one dot under in the following words: **War, warm, walk, talk?**
- 22.—Write the rule for marking **a** Italian; for marking **a** broad; for marking **a** an equivalent of **o** short.
- 23.—Write the rule for placing the tilde over **e, i** and **y**; for marking **o** and **u** with the circumflex.
- 24.—When and how do you make **or** an equivalent of **ur**? Give examples.
- 25.—Write six monosyllables in which **or** must have the circumflex placed above and six in which it must have this mark placed below the vowel.

26.—What classes of words require the circumflex to be placed above **a** and **e**? Give examples.

27.—What change is made by the addition of **s** in monosyllables ending in **ce**, **ge**, **se**, **ze** and **ss**? Give examples.

28.—What sound must we give **s** at the beginning of words and in words where **ss** occurs?

---

### DIRECTIONS FOR THE USE OF POLLARD'S SYNTHETIC THIRD READER.

Follow, step by step, the instructions for presenting each lesson as it occurs. Show that the rules governing the sounds of the short vowels in monosyllables apply, as well, to the *first* syllables of longer words, and also to *accented* syllables; that, in first syllables ending in any consonant except **r**, we may expect to mark the vowel short.

Explain clearly the meaning of the obscure sound of a vowel. Show, by illustrations, that it is its true sound *shortened* and spoken lightly, without emphasis; and, because of this, we may expect to find the "obscure vowels" in *unaccented terminations*. Make this clear by contrasting accented and unaccented terminations of the same orthography; as, *eface*, surface; *disband*, husband; *intent*, potent; *upon*, weapon.

Lead pupils to see that the position of a syllable, as well as the accent, sometimes determines the vowel sounds.

Do not lead them to think that exceptions will not be found, but explain to them that, as a general rule, in unaccented terminations containing but one vowel and ending with one or more consonants (**r** excepted), **a** is short obscure, while **e** and **i** are often short or silent. Mark **e** short obscure in such words as **moment**, **silence**, and mark **e** and **i** short in such words as **fuel**, **poem**, **pupil**, **civil**, **curtain**, etc., because of the danger of substituting the sound of **u** short for the correct sounds of **e** and **i**. By so doing, common errors in pronunciation, such as **poum**, **momunt**, **pupul**, etc., will be avoided.

**ar**, **er**, **ir**, **or**, **ur**, **yr** (glide obscure). To indicate the glide obscure sounds, which must be given to the "pony vowels" when they are found in unaccented syllables, we place the inverted breve between the vowel and the **r** (thus: **ar̄**) in order to remind pupils that the vowel sound must not be separated from the sound of the **r** that follows it; as, **mortar**, **mother**, **fakir**, **odor**, **murmur**, **zephyr**.

**Note**.—The International Dictionary marks **u** short in the unaccented syllables of **murmur**, etc., but for uniformity we prefer to use our glide obscure mark (the inverted breve).

Give daily drills, first upon the prefixes and afterward upon the suffixes of classified words found in the lessons. Results will show that pupils will become so thoroughly familiar with these "beginnings" and "endings" they will recognize them readily in longer words and, by this means, will be able to distinguish the roots of words and place the accent correctly.

A study of the derivation of words belongs, properly to Fourth Reader grades, but a rapid recognition of prefixes, suffixes and roots will be the result, if daily drills be given in the correct pronunciation of classified words.

**LESSON I.**—Explain the meaning of the word prefix. Write upon the board the words **around**, **abstain**, **account**, and show that **a**, **ab** and **ac** are prefixes.

*SUPPLEMENT.*

Explain that the same rules must be applied to the marking of prefixes as were observed in marking monosyllables; that the prefix **a** is short Italian, **as**, **amidst**; that **a** is short in **ab** and **ac** because these prefixes do not end in **r**; that the accent must not be placed upon the prefix, but upon the syllable following it.

Train pupils into a quick perception of the prefixes in the same manner as they were trained to recognize the keys of monosyllables. When made perfectly familiar with the prefixes used in the classified words at the beginning of each reading lesson, show them where the mark of accent must be placed. Require them to copy and mark the classified words of this lesson. This will impress upon them the rule that the accent must not fall upon the prefix. If not upon the prefix then it must fall upon the second syllable in the words presented.

Present only the classified words prepared for the purpose of teaching accent, and thus avoid the confusion that must arise when pupils attempt to classify words before they are made familiar with prefixes.

They should be required to pronounce these words, rapidly and distinctly, before the reading is attempted. This drill in marking and pronouncing is to make them thoroughly acquainted with classified words, whether found in the reading lesson or elsewhere. It will, furthermore, teach them where to place the accent when similar words occur in the reading lessons that follow.

Pupils may form sentences, using as many as possible of the words found at the beginning of the lesson. This "sentence building" and the placing of the accent marks correctly, in the classified words, should precede the reading lesson. It is this preparation that makes them familiar with the new words and enables them to spell correctly when the same words are dictated for that purpose. It will also cultivate a proper use of language.

Pupils may try to find words, similar to the classified lists, in the accompanying reading lesson.

**LESSON II.**—Make pupils familiar with the prefixes **ad**, **af**, **ag**, **al** and **an**, after which require them to write the classified words and place the accent marks correctly. Show that **a** is short because the syllables do not end in **r**.

Give daily "talks" upon action words. Prove that the words at the beginning of this lesson are action words by prefixing the preposition **to** to each. Ask the meaning of **to admire**, **to advance**. Whenever it is possible let pupils "act out" these words. Make this a daily exercise.

For busy work desire pupils to write sentences, using a different action word in each. Confine them to the use of the words at the beginning of the lessons.

Also require that the accent marks be placed correctly, calling attention to the fact that prefixes must not be accented, except when we wish to change verbs of the same orthography into nouns or adjectives; as, **prefix'**, **pre'fix**, **concert'**, **con'cert**.

**LESSON III.**—Write upon the board **ap**, **ar**, **as** and **at**, and train pupils into a quick perception of these prefixes. Refer to the change made in the sound of **a** when it is followed by **r** and by **rr**. (Rule given in the Manual.) As, **afar**, **array**.

**LESSON IV.**—Mark **e** or **o** long obscure and **i** short in prefixes which end in either of these vowels; as, **begin**, **digress**, **profess**.

**LESSON V.**—Explain that the prefixes **com** and **con** have the same meaning; that the consonant following determines which must be used; that second syllables beginning with **b**, **p** and **m** require the prefix **com**, while those beginning with **c**, **d**, **f**, **t** and **v** are preceded by **con**.

LESSON VI.—Present the prefixes **col**, **cor**, **de** and **dis** for rapid recognition and afterward refer to each separately. Require that the true sound of **o** short be given in the prefix **col**.

Show that as the **r** is doubled in words containing the prefix **cor**, the **o** in this prefix must be marked short; as, **correct**, **corrupt**. For the sound of **e** in the prefix **de**, see Lesson IV.

In treating of the prefix **dis** explain that, as a rule, **s** is surd, but in some words it is sonant; as, **disease**, **discern**, **dissolve**.

LESSON VII.—Keep the thought before pupils that, except in nouns and adjectives, the prefix must not be accented. As a rule **x** equals **gz** when followed by a vowel or a breath consonant; as, **exact**, **exhaust**; but has its true sound when followed by other consonants; as, **expire**, **extract**.

LESSON VIII.—Explain here that in the prefix **for**, **o** is short (not the same sound as in the word **for**); but the same rule must be applied to the prefix **fore** as to monosyllables ending in **e** silent.

In presenting such words as **Impart** show that **a** is Italian because it is found with **r** in the accented syllable; but in such words as **collar**, **dollar**, it is glide obscure, because found with **r** in the unaccented syllable.

LESSON IX.—Define the prefix **in**. Refer to the word **Intent** to show that we occasionally find a word that is not a verb with the accent on the second syllable. Pupils will see, at once, that **Intent** is not a verb because it does not express an action. Here show again that a verb can be changed to a noun by placing the accent upon the prefix; as; **incense**, **in'cense**.

LESSON X.—Make pupils familiar with the prefixes **mis**, **ob**, **oc** and **of** before they place the accent marks in this lesson.

Show that **ob**, **oc**, **of** and **op** have the same meaning, and that the prefix **ob** is used where the consonant is not doubled.

LESSON XI.—Make pupils familiar with the prefixes **per**, **pre** and **pro**. Ask if all these words are verbs and why.

LESSON XII.—**Re**, **sub**. Ask, "How many think that all the words of this lesson are verbs?"

LESSON XIII.—**Sur**, **sus**, **suc** and **suf**. Ask, "How many and what words in this lesson are not verbs?"

LESSON XIV.—In this lesson, follow the same plan. Lead pupils into the habit of recognizing the verbs in each lesson before placing the accent. In this way they will learn that a large number of primitive verbs of two syllables have the accent on the second.

LESSON XV.—In words containing double vowels show that the accent usually falls upon the syllable containing the double vowel. Show, by comparing the words of this lesson, that the accent falls upon the syllable containing **ee**. Pupils may determine, by placing **a** or **the** in front, which of the words of this lesson are nouns.

LESSON XVI.—Here, also, show that, with the exception of words with the suffix **hood**, the accent usually falls upon the syllable containing **oo**.

Pupils may use these words in sentences to show that they understand their meaning.

LESSON XVII.—Explain the meaning of suffix. Present the suffixes in the same manner as the prefixes were presented. Lead pupils into a recognition of the general rule that when **a** is found in the suffix it has an obscure sound.

*SUPPLEMENT.*

Give the same general directions for suffixes as for prefixes.

Do not let the accent fall upon the suffix of a word.

After pupils are made familiar with a certain number of suffixes, present classified words for marking. In this way they will soon learn to accent the first syllables of such words.

Present the suffixes **al**, **as**, **an** and **and** and show that the accent must not be placed upon these.

**LESSON XVIII.**—Mark **e** short when **ed** follows **t** or **d**, but silent when **ed** follows other consonants; **as, acted, added, asked, reared.** **S** equals **z** in the final unaccented syllable **es.** The **e** is short when this syllable follows **c, g, s, x, ch or sh.**

**LESSON XIX.**—When **en** final does not follow the liquids **l, m, n, r**, mark **e** silent. Mark **e** final silent in words of the "le" family.

Mark **e** short in the suffix **et.**

**LESSON XX.**—Show, by illustrations, the different sounds of **er.**

- 1st. When found in monosyllables and accented syllables, as **fern, sternly.**
- 2d. When found in accented syllables which are immediately followed by a vowel or by **r; as, merit, terror.**

3d. When found in unaccented terminations; **as, father, lantern.**

In this way lead pupils to see that when **er** is found in an unaccented termination, it has its glide obscure sound. They can then determine at a glance the sound of **er** in the words of this lesson.

Compare the words **anger** and **stranger** and show the difference in the sound of **n** when it follows a short and a long vowel, and is followed, in turn, by **ge.**

In such words as **finger, linger,** we underline **n** and mark the **g** following it hard although it precedes **e.** In this lesson, mark **g** silent only when **ng** ends the syllable. Show, in this connection, that **g** is not silent in **linger, danger,** because it does not end the syllable.

**LESSON XXI.**—Mark **e** short (not short obscure) in the termination **ess.** Require correct pronunciation. Do not accept of **luß** for **less** or **nuss** for **ness.** As a rule, words ending in **less** are adjectives, and words ending in **ness** are nouns.

**LESSON XXII.**—Dissyllables do not end in **ick.** With the exception of **derrick** we do not find **k** added.

Mark **i** short in the suffixes **ic, id, it, etc.**

**LESSON XXIII.**—Mark **i** short in the suffixes **il, ile, in and ain.** Show that the suffixes **il** and **ile** are equivalents; also that **i** is often short in unaccented syllables ending in **e** silent.

**LESSON XXIV.**—Mark **i** short in the suffixes **ing, ish, ist and iff.**

**LESSON XXV.**—Mark **i** short in the suffixes **ice, ise, elt and ive.**

**LESSON XXVI.**—Mark **y** short when it is the only letter, or the final letter and only vowel, of an unaccented syllable.

**LESSON XXVII.**—The unaccented termination **or** should be marked glide obscure; **as, arbor, tailor, motor,** except in **squalor**, where **o** is circumflex, and in a few words in which the **o** is short; **as, furor, tremor, flexor, stupor, torpor, censor, donor.**

Make **o** an equivalent of **u** short in the unaccented terminations **om and ome.**

In the word languor show that u has the sound of w (consonant).

Rule: When gu is followed by i or o in an unaccented syllable, make u an equivalent of w.

LESSON XXVIII.—Show that the suffixes **tion** and **sion** are equivalents.

Rule: When c, s or t is followed by io in an unaccented syllable, these consonants have the sound of sh (except, when preceded by a vowel, s equals zh).

Mark i silent after a dotted consonant and make o equal to u short when tio or sio is found in the same syllable.

LESSON XXIX.—Show the difference in the pronunciation of words ending in **ous** and **ious**. When the syllable begins with cl or tl, the sound of sh must precede **ous**; but when **ous** is preceded by a consonant, this sound is never heard.

In the termination **ous**, mark u silent and o equal to u short.

Compare such words as **famous** and **gracious**, **pompous** and **cautious**, that pupils may recognize the difference in the pronunciation of the last syllables. In **bilious**, i in the termination equals consonant y.

LESSON XXX.—The word **full**, used as a suffix, always drops one l, and nouns which are made by the addition of this suffix form their plurals regularly by adding s to the singular; as, **handfuls**, **spoonfuls**.

Give frequent drills in the pronunciation of words ending in **ute**, **use** and **ure**.

Rule: In the termination **ure**, mark u long obscure and e final silent; as, **verdure**, **feature**, **culture**, **failure**.

When s or z has the sound of zh and these consonants are followed by ure, orthoepists differ as to the sound of u.

In **pleasure** and **leisure** Webster suggests the obscure sound, while Worcester makes this vowel obscure in all the words where ure follows the sound of zh. Teachers can do as they prefer in the pronunciation of such words.

Write the following stanza upon the blackboard and read, giving u its correct sound in words ending in ure:

"It makes the heart leap but to witness his joy:  
Proud wealth has no pleasure, I trow,  
Like the rapture that beats in the pulse of a boy  
As he gathers his treasure of snow.  
Then lay not the trappings of wealth on thine heirs  
While health and the riches of nature are theirs."

LESSON XXXI.—Show by the words of this lesson that it is the positions syllables occupy which determine the sounds of their vowels. When ad, al, ac, etc., form the first syllables of words a must be marked short; when these letters form or are found in the last syllables, they must be marked with the inverted breve to show they have the obscure sound. Also when ack, ach, am and as are found in second syllables, we must mark a short obscure. Exception, **sumach**.

LESSON XXXII.—Present monosyllables ending in ace, age and ate to show that here a is long; as, **iace**, **page**, **mate**. Contrast these with dissyllables ending in ace, age and ate, to show that a has its long obscure sound in these unaccented syllables; as, **solace**, **bondage**. In verbs, a is long in the termination ate; as, **vacate**.

Show, also, that in unaccented syllables, a has its short Italian sound; as, **drama**, **polka**, etc.

LESSON XXXIII.—In this lesson show the different sounds of ar and war in

*SUPPLEMENT.*

accented and in unaccented syllables; as, *carpet, altar, warfare, bulwark, warden, toward*.

Show, also, how the short Italian changes to the short obscure sound with the change of accent; as, *fasting, breakfast, passing, carcass, dancer, nuisance*.

LESSON XXXIV.—When **e**n final follows the liquids **l, m, n, r**, mark **e** short; as, **sullen, omen, linen, children**. Also in the words **chicken, kitchen, aspen** and a few others. In other dissyllables ending in **e**n mark **e** silent; as, **laden, broken, haven**.

The common error of substituting **u** short for **e** short obscure has led us to emphasize the correct sounding of the unaccented terminations **ent** and **ment**. Guard against impure pronunciation. It is *moment*, not *momunt*; *poem*, not *poum*; *patient*, not *patiunt*.

LESSON XXXV.—Present words in which **e**r is found both in the accented and unaccented syllables; as, **sternly, govern**.

In presenting dissyllables ending in **e**r show how many parts of speech they represent; as, **mother, larger, farther**.

Pupils may use these words correctly in the stories they relate; as, A number of the **larger** boys went over the river.

The **upper** part of the old bridge began to totter when they had passed over to the **farther** end.

Let each, in turn, frame a sentence containing one or more words ending in **e**r.

LESSON XXXVI.—Give frequent drills in the pronunciation of dissyllables ending in **e**st. Remind pupils that the words are *forest*, not *forust*; *tempest*, not *tempust*.

In pronouncing dissyllables ending in **le** caution pupils against introducing the sound of **u** short between the **b** and **l**. Throw the consonant sounds **dl, bl, fl, pl** and **kl** from the lips quickly and clearly. Do not say *wrinkul* nor *sparkul*, but *wrinkle, sparkle*.

In words ending in **eth** require correct pronunciation. Do not accept *lovuth*.

LESSON XXXVII.—Rule: When the singular number of nouns ends in **f** the plural is formed by changing the **f** to **v** and adding **es**; as, **beef, beeves; self, selves**.

Give a language lesson on number in connection with this lesson.

LESSON XXXVIII.—Rule: Nouns in the singular number ending in **y** preceded by a consonant, form their plurals (and verbs their third person, singular) by changing **y** into **i** and adding **es**; as, **daisy, daisies, vary, varies**.

Rule: Nouns ending in **y** preceded by a vowel form their plurals (and verbs their third person, singular) by adding **s**; as, **alley, alleys; journey, journeys**.

A language lesson in number should precede these rules.

LESSON XXXIX.—Compare monosyllables ending in **ence, end, em** and **e!** with the second syllables of the words of this lesson, that pupils may know **e** is short obscure in the unaccented termination **ence**. In the other terminations, **e** is short. Guard against such pronunciation as *silunce, poum*.

LESSON XL.—Show, by illustration, that in monosyllables ending in **od, op** and **ot, o** is short; but, in dissyllables, as in the words presented, **O** has its obscure sound.

LESSON XLI.—When **o** is the final letter of the unaccented syllable mark it long obscure; as, **hero, motto**.

When the unaccented syllable ends in **ow**, mark **w** silent and **o** long obscure; as, **elbow, arrow**.

**LESSON XLII.**—In this lesson show that when each of the syllables forms a word by itself, its vowel should be marked in accordance with the rules governing monosyllables; as, **sea, shore, seashore.**

In the second column of words, **o** in the termination is equivalent to **u** short.

**LESSON XLIII.**—In the first and second columns of this lesson, **o** in the termination is silent.

When **on** is preceded by **e** or **i** in the same syllable, make **o** an equivalent of **u** short; as, **pigeon, cushion.**

**LESSON XLIV.**—In the unaccented syllables **ub, ut** and **um**, mark **u** short; as, **hub bub, chestnut, alum.**

**LESSONS XLV TO L.**—In these six lessons the words are classified by their roots. Lead pupils to see it is the prefix that changes the meaning. In pronouncing these words be sure that the accent falls upon the last syllable. It is not **abstract, extract, subtract, be:** **abtract, extract, subtract.**

**LESSONS LI, LII, LIII.**—**NOTNS, ADJECTIVES AND VERBS.** If talks about language have been given in connection with the reading lessons, pupils will be prepared to distinguish readily the noun, adjective and verb.

The daily drills given in classified words will enable them to distinguish prefixes and suffixes at sight. The teacher must refer frequently to the fact that a change of accent often converts a verb into a noun or adjective, or the reverse.

Show, by illustrations, that the accent falls upon the first syllable in nouns or adjectives and upon the second in verbs; as: What a striking contrast we see when we contrast green and yellow.

A **rebel** is one who **rebels** against the laws of his country.

With our **increase** in population our schools must increase.

If I **prefix** the prefix **con** to **tent** I form the word **content.**

Desire pupils to construct similar sentences, choosing the words found at the beginning of the lesson—making of each a noun, adjective or verb by merely changing the accent; as: Say to the **absent** pupil that he must **absent** himself no longer from school.

The teacher should write the same word twice, calling pupils up, in turn, to make of it either a noun, adjective or verb by placing the accent correctly.

Pupils may write two lists of the same words, placing **a** or **an** before the noun and **to** before the verb; as, **an escort, to escort; an insult, to insult;** **a retail store, to retail goods.**

**LESSON LIV.**—Show that final **e** is retained in a few words before the suffix **ing** to distinguish them from other words of similar spelling; as, **singing, singeing.** But the final **e** is dropped when there is no other word of similar spelling; as, **fringing.**

**LESSON LV.**—**TRISYLLABLES.**—A trisyllable is a word of three syllables.

Explain the meaning of the prefix **dis.**

Pupils may change the words at the beginning of this lesson to trisyllables by prefixing **dis** to each.

Show that the accent is not changed when a syllable is prefixed. Pronounce, alternately, a dissyllable from the book and a trisyllable from the slate.

**LESSON LVI.**—Show how the prefix **Im** changes the meaning of words. Pupils

*SUPPLEMENT.*

may prefix **in** when copying the words of this lesson, and pronounce, alternately, from book and slate. Show that the prefixing of this syllable does not change the accent.

LESSON LVII.—After explaining the meaning of **in**, require pupils to make trisyllables of the following words by prefixing this syllable to each, after which pronounce from slate and book.

LESSON LVIII.—Prefix **mis** to each, in writing the words of this lesson, and show how entirely it changes their meaning.

LESSON LIX.—Prefix **un** to the words of this lesson, the teacher pointing out the change in the meaning as the words are pronounced.

LESSON LX.—Form trisyllables by prefixing **pre** to the words of this lesson.

LESSON LXI.—Form trisyllables by prefixing **under** to the words of this lesson.

LESSON LXII.—Form trisyllables by prefixing **inter** to the words and syllables at the beginning of this lesson.

LESSON LXIII.—Form trisyllables by prefixing **over** to the words of this lesson.

LESSON LXIV.—Form trisyllables by the addition of **ion** (suffix **tion**). Here remind pupils that **t**, **s** and **c** have the sound of **sh** when followed by **lo** in an unaccented syllable.

Explain that it would be difficult to say **correct-ion**—that euphony demands that the sound of the final consonant of the second syllable be joined to the suffix.

Show that, in the words of this lesson, although the addition of **ion** takes one letter from the second syllable, still the same syllable is accented; as, **reject**, **rejec-tion**.

LESSON LXV.—Drop **e** final from the dissyllable upon the addition of **ion**.

Lead pupils to see that, in words ending in **ation**, the **a** is always long, and the accent always falls upon the syllable containing **a** long; as, **location**.

In words of the first two columns the accent changes when **ion** (suffix **tion**) is added.

LESSON LXVI.—Here show as a general rule that **i** must be marked short when it is followed by **tion** or **sion** final; as, **fruition**, **division**.

LESSON LXVII.—In this lesson show that trisyllables are formed by dropping final **e** and changing the **d** preceding it to **s** when **ion** is added; as, **evade**, **evasion**.

These exercises in trisyllables ending in **ion** will help pupils remember which words take **sion** and which take **tion**.

The general rule for marking the accent of such words is to place it upon the syllable preceding the dotted consonant.

LESSON LXVIII.—Form trisyllables of the words of this lesson by the addition of **ion** (suffix **sion**).

Show, by pronouncing the word **expression**, that one **s** is silent and the other is joined to the suffix as a part of the third syllable.

LESSON LXIX.—Rule: Words ending in **y** preceded by a consonant change **y** to **i** or **e** when the suffix **er**, **est**, **ly**, **ness** or **ous** is added; as, **lazy**, **lazier**, **laziest**, **lazily**, **laziness**; **pity**, **piteous**; **fury**, **furious**. In like manner form trisyllables of the words of this lesson.

A language lesson upon the degrees of adjectives should precede the writing, marking and pronouncing of these words.

**LESSON LXX.**—Have pupils form trisyllables by adding **ANCE** to the words of this lesson. Mark a short obscure in the suffix **ANCE**.

**LESSON LXXI.**—Add **ment** to the words of this lesson. **Magnificent**, **penitent**, **restitution**. It is not **munt**, but **ment**. **Mark** **one** short **stressed** **vowel** in the suffix **ment**. In **chastisement**, the accent falls upon the first syllable.

**LESSON LXXII.**—When the verb ends in a single consonant, preceded by a single vowel, double the final letter upon the addition of *s*, as, **COMPELLING**. When the verb ends in a silent, drop this vowel upon the addition of *s*, as,

**LESSON LXXIII.**—Illustrate the diphthongal whistle by the whistle of this laugh. Require the unclosing and curving of the lips in whistle continuing the diphthongal **ow** and **ou**.

Show that the accent falls upon the syllable containing the vowel *ɛ*.

**LESSON LXXIV.**—Show in this lesson that when **EW** is found in the infinitive  
syllable, **W** must be marked silent and **O** long; otherwise

When it is found that the accent happens in a syllable containing OW, we must mark and sound these letters as a proper diphthong; as, *allow*. This rule is often broken in the inflected forms of words ending in OW; as, *borrowing*, *borrower*. A few exceptions are found; as, *bawdy*.

Require distinct articulation in the pronunciation of the syllables **mo**-**mo**-**mo**—**mo**—**mo**, etc., etc.

**LESSON LXXV.**—Show that the accents fall upon the syllables *litho* and *lym-*, and diphthongize *ov* and *oi*.

Pupils need be as in line to determine the number of hours required, which are always the same.

**LESSON 1277.**—As a travelling road people go on foot or in carts or  
carriages. Many roads are made of stones.

Also, when I was the owner of a shop, the ~~owner~~ was a man who had available comprising the long winter, as ~~occupations~~ ~~and~~ ~~and~~

**LESSON 11.**—Make yourself familiar with the other subjects taught in the course in the month of June in the middle and at the end of each month in your class. It is a good

Explain why the first sentence of the first paragraph of the passage is effective.

that it is because these words are derived from the construction with which it had been dropped from the edition of the title in 1888-1890.

the sum being £ 2000. The sum to be received in hand for the preceeding £ 3 500. a ~~sum~~ ~~sum~~ ~~sum~~ ~~sum~~

Lesson 111—Use of the words & the names in the lesson  
syllables the day words or short vowel words.

LESSON 10. The first and second endings of the verb are used in the first and second singular and plural forms. See first and second endings of the verb, and the first and second endings of the verb, and the first and second endings of the verb.

*Exercises will consist of short as well as long periods of work.*

*SUPPLEMENT.*

**POLYSYLLABLES.**—Show that the same general rules that govern the marking of trisyllables may be applied to polysyllables.

As previous drills have made pupils familiar with prefixes and suffixes, they will readily recognize these in longer words and refrain from placing the accent marks over them; as, for instance, in the word **advisable**, they will see at a glance that **ad** is the prefix and **able** the suffix, and know at once that the accent falls upon the second syllable.

When polysyllables end in **ophy**, **ogy**, **etry**, &c., show that the accent must fall upon the syllable preceding these final syllables. Also, as in dissyllables and trisyllables, place the accent upon the syllables which precede such final syllables as **tion**, **sion**, **tious**, **cial**, &c.

As a general rule, when **e**, **o** or **u** forms an unaccented syllable by itself, mark the vowel long obscure; as, **society**, **astrology**, **impetuous**.

When syllables ending in **a**, **e**, **o** or **u** are followed by the final syllables **tion** or **sion**, mark these vowels long and place the accent mark above them; as, **penetration**, **Incompletion**, **locomotion**, **diminution**.

When **i** forms an unaccented syllable by itself, as a general rule mark it short; as, **felicity**. This does not apply to initial syllables; as, **Identical**.

**READING.**

When we desire to have our children instructed in music, our first care is to secure a competent teacher—one whose ability is unquestioned. So should it be in the selection of teachers for primary grades; only good teachers should be employed. Teachers who shall be able to prove, through their daily readings to their classes, that "the voice of song is not sweeter than the voice of eloquence;" teachers whose varied and perfect modulations shall in turn bring to mind such harmonies of nature as the whispering leaves, the babbling brook, the roaring waterfall. In this, as in other branches, we should secure for the child only such models as we desire him to imitate.

The Pollard Method is one of voice culture from the beginning. Our first drills in articulation teach the pupil the difference between vowel and consonant sounds. He is thus led to note the difference between pure and obstructed tones. Breathing exercises follow the teacher's explanation of breathing and should be repeated daily at the beginning of each phonic drill.

The method teaches reading as music, art, mechanics are best taught—by so familiarizing the child with the rudiments that the correct use of them becomes involuntary, and all his energies are left free for concentration upon the important work of word-painting, expression and emphasis.

The piano player is forced to spend weeks, months, years, in the practice of the scales and finger exercises, so that the mere touching of the required keys becomes a matter largely of mechanical action, and only when this proficiency is attained are the great things of music—the bringing out of its thought, heart, soul—attempted. The Pollard method trains the child to a rapid, prompt, unhesitating,

almost mechanically accurate, recognition and pronunciation of the words composing every sentence. The Pollard-trained vocal organs touch the sound-keys of language as surely and with as little thought as the fingers of the expert pianist strike the sound-keys of his instrument; and, like the pianist, the child's every energy and power is free for concentration upon the great and (by this time) the delightful work of searching out the diamonds of thought and giving them clear-cut and sparkling to his listeners.

Do we ever require a child to talk naturally? Is not reading giving expression to the thoughts of others—telling their stories for them? If so, and if the lesson is within the comprehension of the child, what is there to prevent his talking the sentences with the ease and freedom that natural expression demands? Nothing save the hesitancy—the uncertainty—induced by those insurmountable obstacles, unfamiliar words.

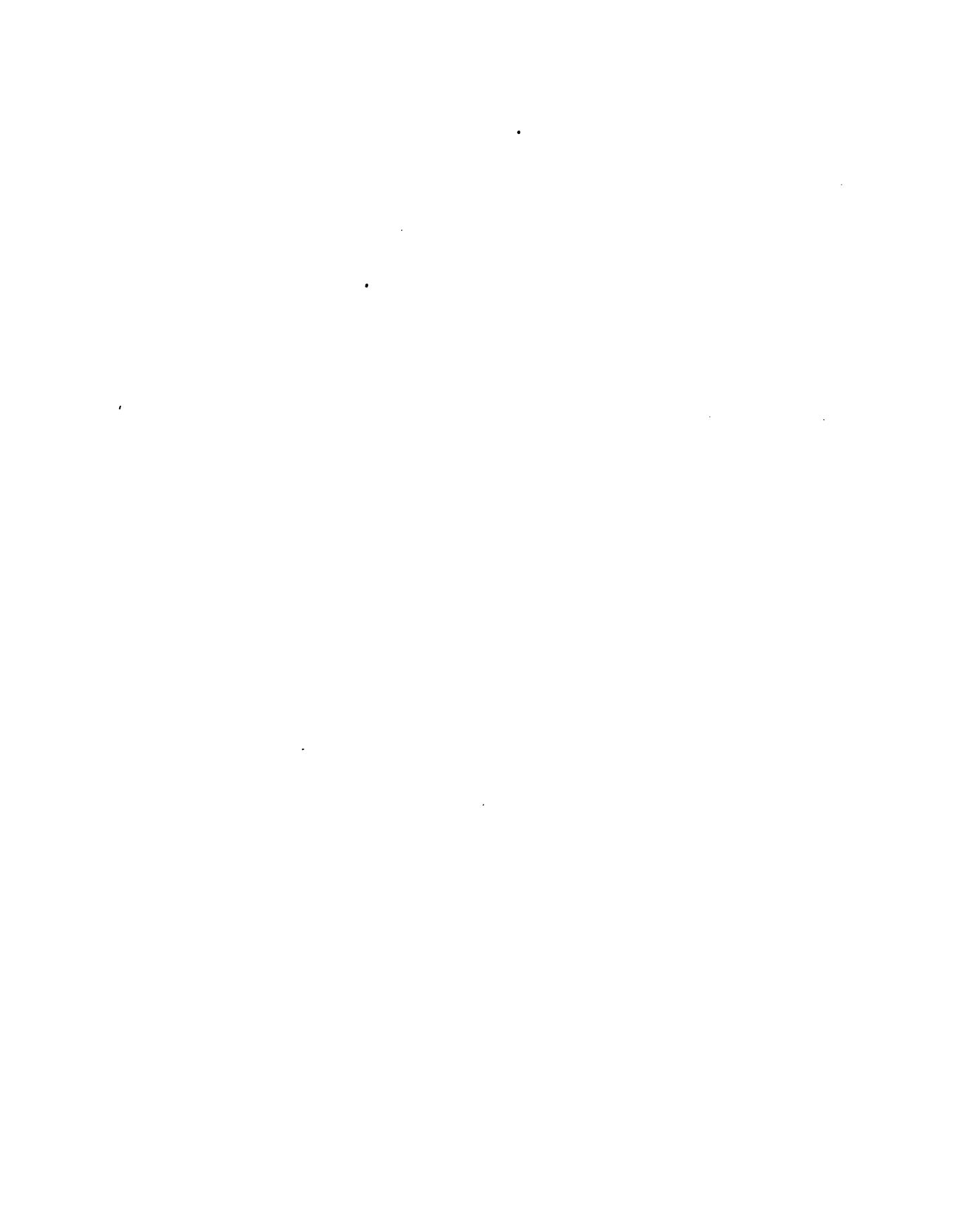
Judging from results, which are everywhere apparent, I do not hesitate to affirm that it is the prevailing methods of teaching which make good readers the exception and not the rule. How can it be otherwise when independent pronunciation forms no part of the instruction—when drills in articulation are left wholly to the choice of the teacher—when the memory is burdened with a limited number of word-forms which the eye must learn to distinguish before others are introduced?

That we may be able to realize how such reading becomes laborious, uncertain and unnatural, we have only to attempt to read stories in a foreign language before we have made ourselves thoroughly familiar with the words of which they are composed.

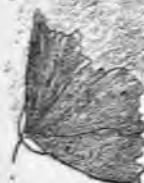
We are, perhaps, acquainted with a certain number of these words and begin a sentence bravely, only to stop abruptly before the first obstacle we encounter until assistance is rendered. Again, we proceed but only to find another hindrance farther on, and finally when frequent interruptions lead us to realize our helplessness, we abandon the task, resolved to make a more careful study of the words before we attempt to read intelligently.

Throughout my long experience in the school-room, I found no difficulty in teaching my pupils to read well. The natural expression came without effort upon my part. They were not taught to "labor through the lines," but to "talk for the author;" to study his meaning and render the paragraph or stanza as he would were he in their midst, and often, when a beautiful pen-picture was portrayed, it was their privilege to lay aside their readers and favor me with its illustration upon the blackboard.

How pleasing is the memory of the deft fingers that traced the wanderings of Enoch Arden after each stanza was read; that showed me how the "loving herd wind slowly o'er the lea" when the lleye absorbed our thoughts; that pictured the dim old forest where the little brother played before he "fell asleep by the gates of light!"



POLLARD'S  
Synthetic  
Songs



## From the Author to the Teacher.

---

The design of these songs is to make the first lessons of reading easy and attractive.

Teachers who have tested the Synthetic Method understand that much depends upon a pleasing presentation of the sounds of the letters. Children are fond of singing, and the letters, arranged to familiar airs, afford them daily recreation and most profitable drills.

The *ladders*, *windows* and letters (c and g) should be copied carefully upon the black-board, with colored chalk, and permitted to remain there for daily singing until the sounds of the letters are made perfectly familiar.

Be careful to require pupils to sing with a *soft tone* of voice. If a low pitch be given, it will cause them to use coarse, heavy tones, and this will have a tendency to make them sing flat. The teacher should test the pitch of  $\overline{d}$  frequently, and try to overcome the universal habit of *loud* singing.

If double ended pitch pipes (in  $\overline{\overline{c}}$  and  $\overline{\overline{g}}$ ) are used, the pitch  $\overline{2}$  can be obtained from the  $\overline{\overline{c}}$  pipe by singing the descending scale.

$\overline{\overline{c}}, \overline{5}, \overline{a}, \overline{g}, \overline{f}, \overline{e}, \overline{d},$   
 $8, \quad 7, \quad 6, \quad 5, \quad 4, \quad 3, \quad 2,$   
or

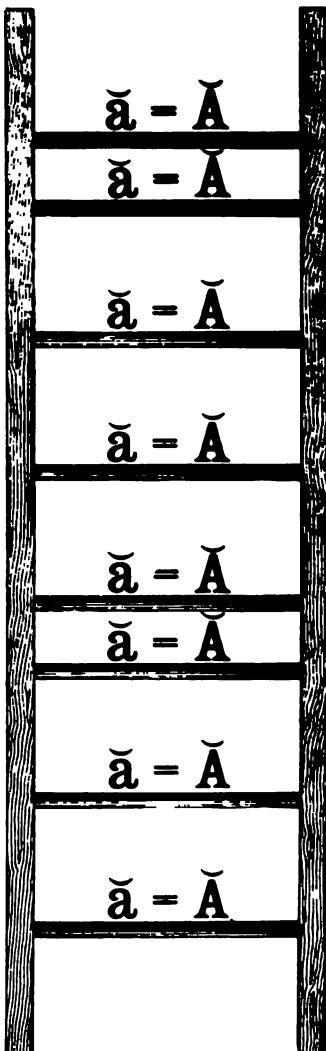
**do, si, la, sol, fa, me, re, and calling 2 (or re) do.**

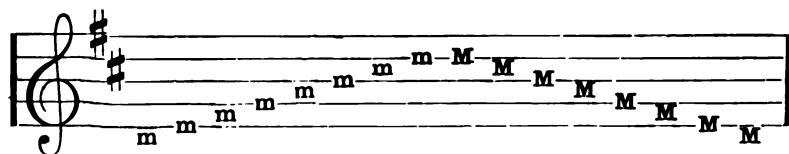
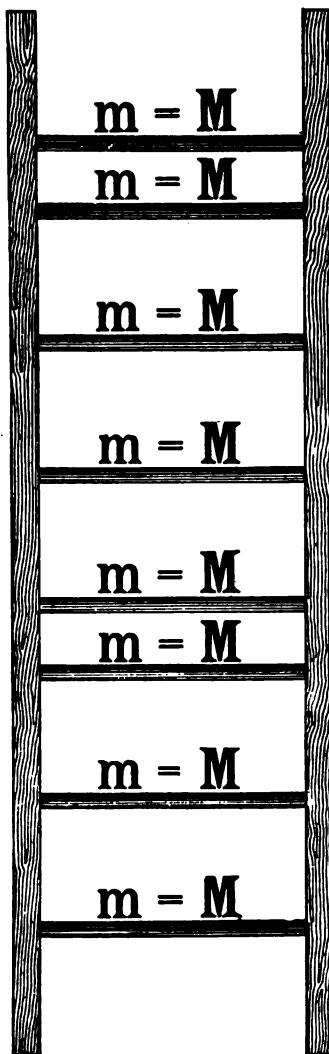
If the  $\overline{g}$  pipe be used, sing:

$\overline{g}, \overline{f}, \overline{e}, \overline{d},$   
 $8, \quad 7, \quad 6, \quad 5$   
or

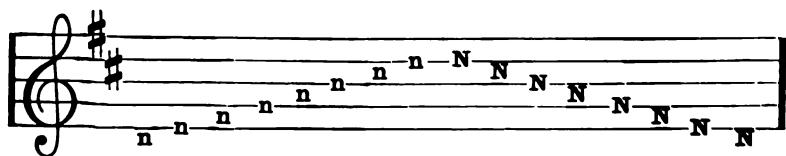
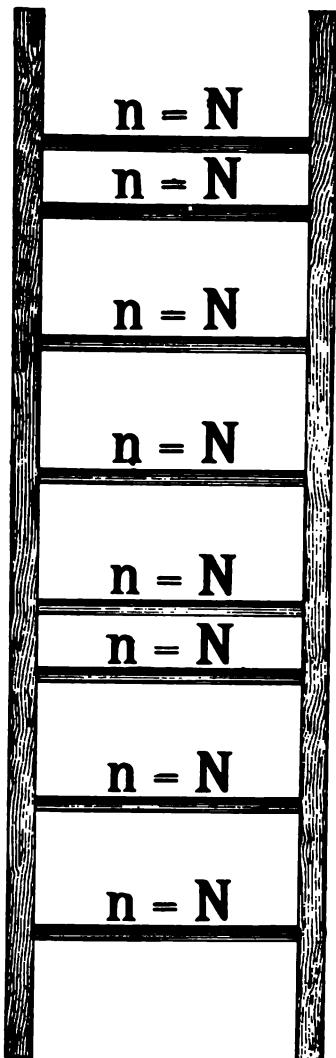
**do, si, la, sol, and call 5 (or sol) do.**

The pitch of  $\overline{g}$  as do should be given for all the window songs.

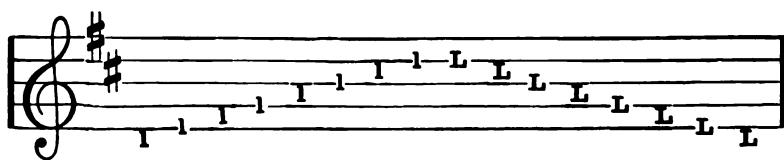
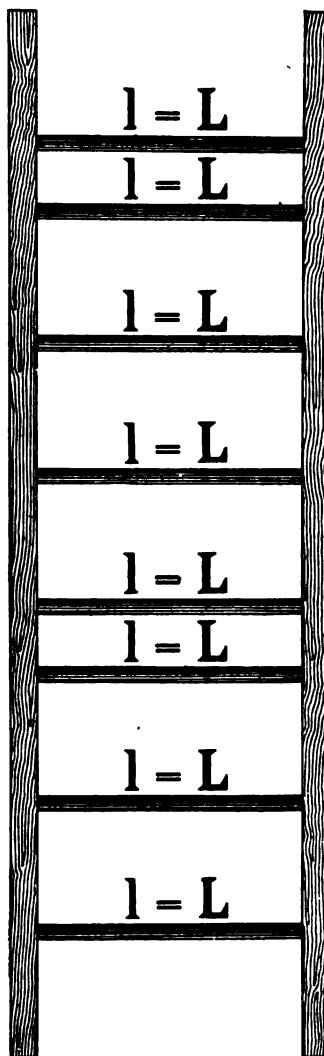




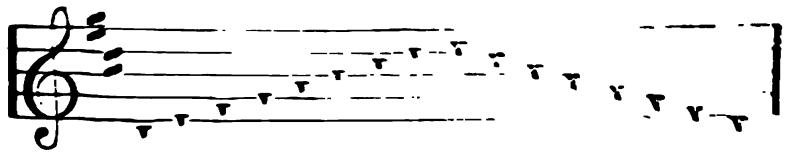
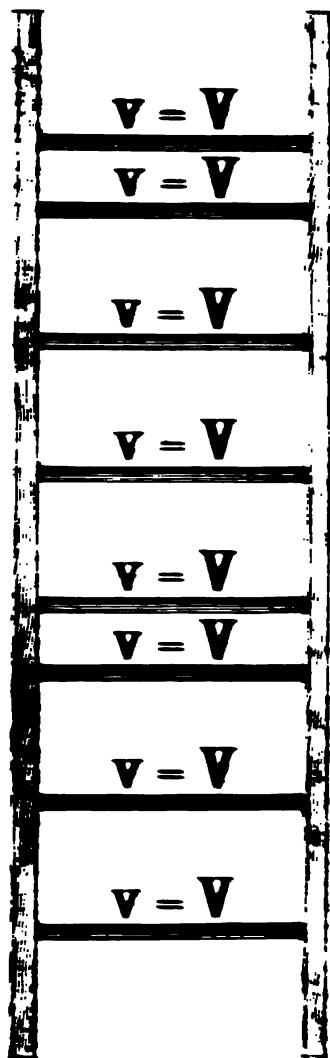
(222)

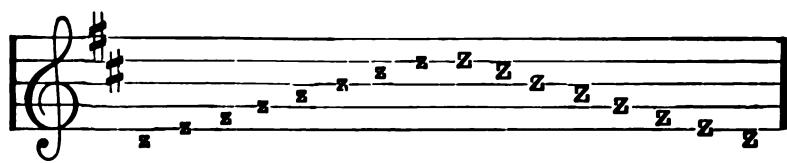
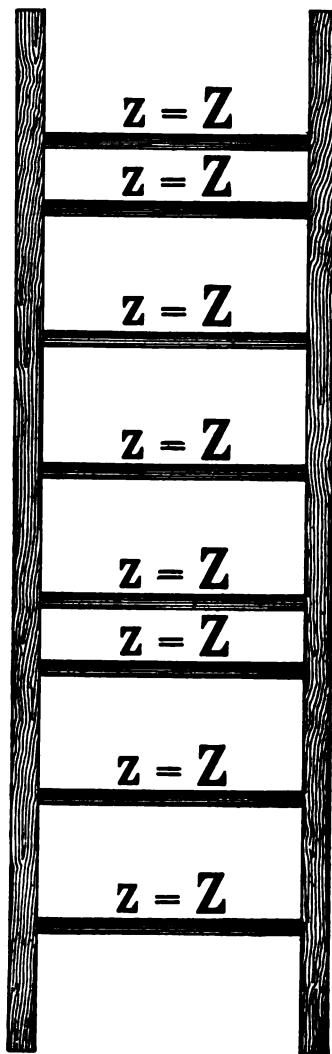


(223)



(224)





(226)

## WINDOW SONGS.\*

227

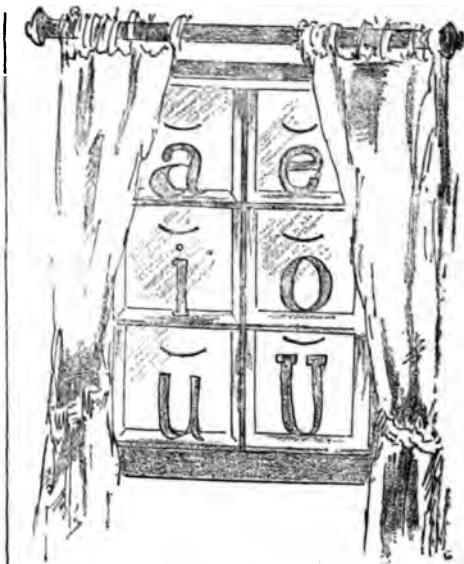
Air.—“THUMPKINS SAYS, I’LL DANCE.”



Vowel one is ā;  
Vowel two is ē;  
Three and four are ī and ō;  
Five and six are ū and ū;

CHORUS.

Sound and sing, ye merry little ones,  
Ā, ē, ī and ō and ū.



Vowel one is ā;  
Vowel two is ē;  
Three and four are ī and ō;  
Five and six are ū and ū;

CHORUS.

Sound and sing, ye merry little ones,  
Ā, ē, ī and ō and ū.



\* Draw these windows on board and point to letters as pupils sing.

## WINDOW SONGS—Continued.

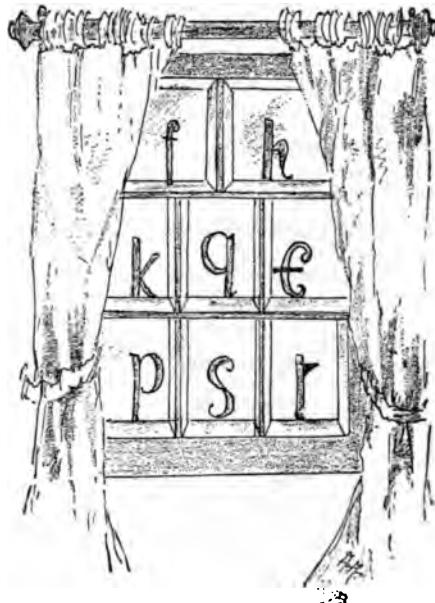


Letter one is f;  
Letter two is h;  
Three, four, five are k, q, e;  
Six, seven, eight are p, s, t.

## CHORUS.

Sound and sing, ye merry little ones.

F, h, k, q, p, s, t.



Baby sleeps, Sh, ch;  
Children sneeze, ch, tch;.  
Blow out light now wh and wh;  
Sneeze again, ch, tch and ch.

## CHORUS.

Sound and sing, ye merry little ones,

Sh=ch; ch=tch; wh and wh.



## WINDOW SONGS—Continued.

229



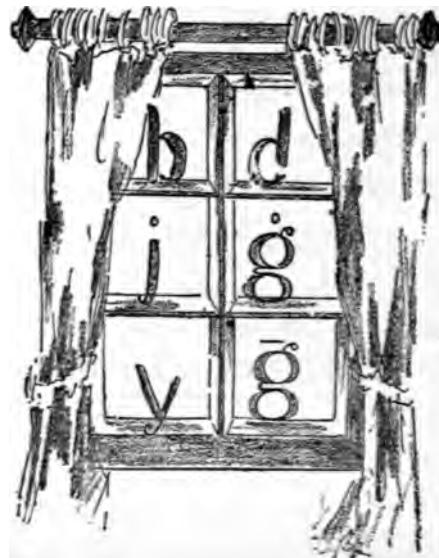
Letter one is m;  
Letter two is n;  
Three and four are l and r;  
Five and six are v and w.

CHORUS.  
Sound and sing, ye merry little ones,  
**M, n, l, r, v and w.**



Letter one is b;  
Letter two is d;  
Three and four are j and g;  
Five and six are y and ḡ

CHORUS.  
Sound and sing, ye merry little ones,  
**B, d, j, g, y and ḡ.**



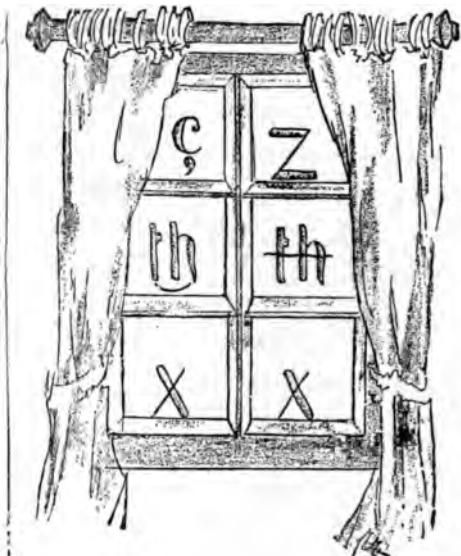
## WINDOW SONGS—Continued.



Run quick, Fido, ç.  
Hear the bees buzz, z.  
Hiss like geese now th and th.  
Sing with me x, x and x.

## CHORUS.

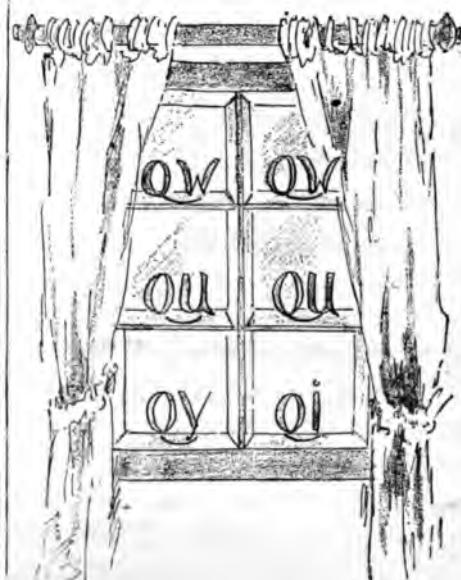
Sound and sing ye merry little ones,  
ç, z, th, th, x and x.



First of owl is ow:  
First of out is ou:  
Oyster starts with oy like oi,  
Oy, oy, oy as heard in boy.

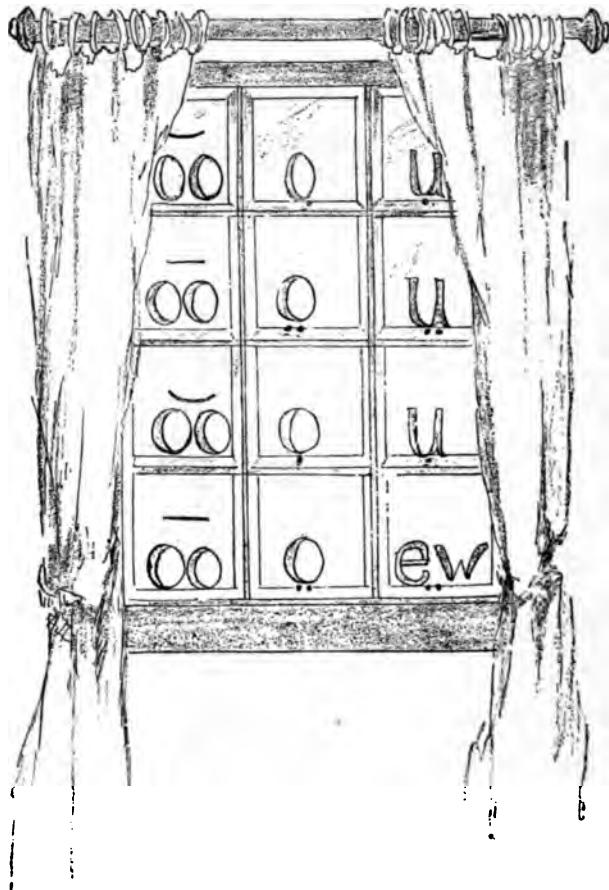
## CHORUS.

Sound and sing, ye merry little ones,  
ow, ow, ou, ou, oy and oi.



## WINDOW SONGS—Continued.

238



First row oo, o, u;

Next row oo, o, u:

Third like first row, oo, o, u:

Fourth like second oo, o, u.

### CHORUS.

Sound and sing, ye merry little ones,

oo, o, u, oo, o, u, ew.

## LETTER SONG.

Air—“Yankee Doodle.”



ā ā ā ā ā ā ā ā

m m m m m m m

ā m ā m ā m ā m

ā ā m m ā ā

a l n l n l n l

l n l n l n

n l n l n l n l

l n l n l n

Cho. ā ā ā ā ā ā ā

m m m m m m m

l l l l l l l l

n n n n n n n

v w v w v w v w

w v w v w v v

v w v w v w v w

w v w v w v v

m s m n m n m n

v w v w v w

m w n v w w u v

ā ā ā ā ā ā

Cho. v v v v v v

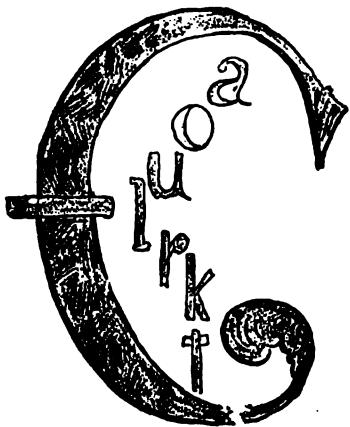
w w w w w w w

v w v w v w v

w w v v w w w

(Arrange other sounds to this air.)

Air.—“HERE WE GO ROUND THE MULBERRY BUSH.”



Finding this c in front of a, eat.

in front of o, eat.

in front of u, eat.

In front of l, r, k and t, class.

erash.

We mark and sound it e, e,

back.

tart.

Finding this letter after a, eat.

after u,

after o,

Finding this letter after e,

We mark and sound it e, a.

## G HARD.



Finding this **g** in front of **a**,  
in front of **o**,  
in front of **u**,

**gas.**  
**gone.**  
**gust.**  
**glass.**  
**grand.**

Standing in front of **l** or **r**,  
We mark and sound it **ḡ, ḡ,**  
Finding this letter after **a**,

**bag.**  
**rag:**  
**sag.**  
**nag.**  
**tag.**

after **a**,  
after **a**,

Finding this letter after **a**,  
We mark and sound it **ḡ, ḡ,**

**high.**  
**nigh.**  
**sigh.**  
**tight.**

Finding this **g** in front of **h**,  
In front of **h** with **i** before,  
Standing in front with **i** before,  
We mark both letters silent.

**laugh.**  
**cough.**  
**tough.**  
**rough.**

Finding this **g** in front of **h**,  
In front of **h** with **u** before,  
Standing in front with **u** before,  
We mark and sound **gh, gh, gh**

**C SOFT. G SOFT.**

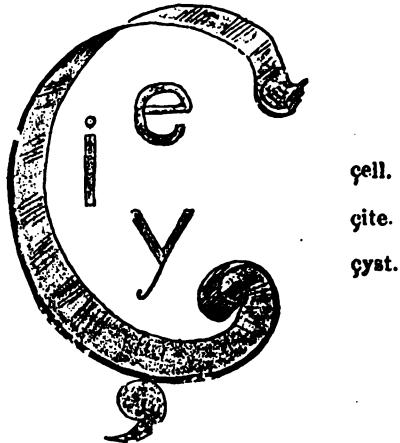
235



C soft      s=c.

Finding this c in front of e,  
in front of i.  
in front of y.

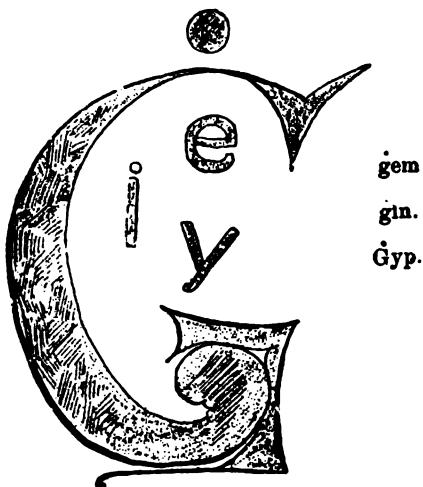
Standing in front of e, i, y,  
We mark and sound it c, c,



G soft      j=g.

Finding this g in front of e.  
in front of i.  
in front of y.

Standing in front of e, i, y,  
We mark and sound it g, g,



**Ū and U.**

Air.—“HOLD THE FORT.”



1. Watch the pointer ev - 'ry pu-pil, Keep the rules in view; Learn the u long

CHORUS.



In this new song, Al - so learn the u. R or ch y chang-es u long



In - to u, you see; So re-mem-ber when you mark it, What its sound must be.

ew

2. Just the same, when these two vowels

After r are found;

Also after ch and y, too

Lips must still be round.

u

**CHORUS.**—U, u, u, u, u, u, u,

(Make your sounding clear;)

Ew, ew, ew, ew, ew, ew, ew,

Two dots under here.

u

3. When the letters r and ch, y,

Do not stand before,

Then we make the u that follows

U and nothing more.

ew

**CHORUS.**—So whenever these two vowels

Do not meet our view,

Following after r, & ch, y,

Then we mark them ew.

4. Ū, ū, ū, ū, ū, ū, ū,

Straight line over ū;

Ew, ew, ew, ew, ew, ew, ew,

Just the same will do.

**CHORUS.**—So, hereafter we'll remember;

Now, while we are young,

We must learn to speak correctly,

This, our mother-tongue.

# THE CROOKED MARK.

237

Air.—“TRAMP, THE BOYS ARE MARCHING.”

Caps, cats, hacks, staffs.

S (The hiss.)

1. When we find this crook-ed mark, At the end of an - y word With the  
sound of p, t, k, or f be-fore, We must try to make the sound that the  
lit - tle pig-gies heard When old Growl-er sprang to chase them from the door.

CHORUS.

S, s, s, But do not bite them; This was Tommy Tuck-er's call; And the doggis seem'd to know  
He must bark and make a show, Just to fright-en them a-way But that was all.

Z=S

Lads, bags, hams, fans, cars.

2. When we find this crooked mark at the end of any word,  
And then do not find p, t, k, f, before,  
We must mark and make the sound as though bees were buzzing round,  
Just as though we heard them buzzing at our door.

CHORUS.—S, s, s, the bees are buzzing; no, no, Growler, do not bark;  
'Twas not s, s, that I said; but s, s, s, s, instead;  
So lie still and hear me sounding as I mark.

Z=S

Cows, boys, toes, pies, days.

3. When we find this crooked mark after voice or vowel sounds,  
Such as ow and oy and ō and ī and ā,  
We must try once more to think that the bees are buzzing round,  
And s, s, s, s, s, s, s, say.

CHORUS.—S, s, s, the bees are buzzing. Busy fingers, faces bright;  
And remember every day that whate'er we do or sav,  
We must always try to do and say aright.

**Exceptions to s, after vowel sounds are found in words rhyming with house; also in words containing “tilde sounds,” as verse.**

## THE SOUNDS OF A.

Air.—“WAIT FOR THE WAGON.”

1. Come, all ye lit - tle peo - ple, And join our song to - day; It  
We al - so sound our a obscure , And e obscure the same; While  
  
is a - bout a. a, a, a, And a, a, a, a. } Sound all to - geth - er,  
us short sounds almost like a. But bears a - noth - er name. }

Sound all to - geth - er, Sound all to - geth - er a, a, a, a, a, a

2. We throw our lips wide open,  
To sing a, a, a, a;  
And only partly close them  
To sound a, a, a, a,  
And next our mouths at corners,  
We slightly inward draw,  
Before we change a. a. a, a,  
To a, a, a, a, a.

Chorus.—Sound all together. etc.

A, a, a, a, a.

3. We place the one dot under  
To sound a, a, a, a;  
Like a, a, only shorter,  
The same as o, o, o.  
O, dolly! I must wash you  
Before we go to tea;  
Then you may watch Bob making  
A swing for you and me.

Chorus.—Sound all together etc.,  
A, a, a, o, o, o.

4. When two lines run together  
And meet above this way,  
The circumflex must show us  
The sound is a, a, a.  
But when right through the centre  
We draw the line instead,  
We give it then the e sound.  
Just as 'tis heard in “red.”

Chorus.—Sound all together etc.,  
A, a, a, a, a.

# LETTER SONG.

239

*Air.—“MY COUNTRY, 'TIS OF THEE.”*

M, ā, m, ā, m, ā, r, n, r, n, r, n,

l, w, l, w, ē, ē, ī, ī,

ū, ū, ū, v, v, z, z, z, z, z, z, ū, ū, ū, ū.

2. M, ā, m, ā, m, ā;

r, n, r, n, r, n;

l, w, l, w;

ē, ē, ē, ī, ī, ī,

ō, ō, ō, ū, ū, ū,

v, v, v, z, z, z,

ō, ū, ū, ū,

3. ow, ow, ow, ou, ou, ou;

oy, oy, oy, oi, oi, oi;

oo, oo, oo, oo.

oo, oo, oo, oo, oo, oo;

u, u, u, u, u, u;

o, o, o, o, o, o;

ur, er, ir, or.

4. ɛ, ɛ, ɛ, ɛ, ɛ, ɛ;

ɛ, ɛ, ɛ, ɛ, ɛ;

ɛ, ɛ, ɛ, ɛ, ɛ, ɛ;

## A SONG OF THE SOUNDS.

♩, m.



1. John-ny sang a ♩ a with his lips apart, As he tho't of the lamb at his grandpa's home;



Then an- oth - er sound, as he dashed around, With his lips to-geth-er; m, m, m,

2. Then his upper teeth pressed his lower lip  
As he tried to blow his breath right through;  
And mamma explained, "That is Kitty's hiss,  
F, f, f, f. You must make it true."

3. Soon his sister came, baby Bess by name,  
And, "Do show me brother, too," she said;  
"Well," said Johnny, "So! Now be sure to blow."  
But she made this sound, v=V instead.

4. "Now, I'm cross, you see, Bessie, look at me,  
I'm a big black dog on the porch at night;  
R, r, r. Take care! I can see you there:  
Little girl, run fast, for this dog can bite."

5. Johnny did not know Bess was frightened so  
Till he saw her fly through the open door;  
"Come back, pet," he said, "do not be afraid,  
And I will not growl at you any more."

6. "Now, whate'er I say, mind, is all in play;  
My mouth is a cave and my tongue a bear;  
If you just peep in through the double doors,  
You will see him resting and quiet there."

7. "But he oft moves round when I make a sound,  
Both up and down, as I felt him then;  
He can reach so high when I talk or cry,  
He can touch the top of his small red den."

8. Said mamma, "See mine! When I say 'long line,'  
The point goes up to the ceiling too;  
When l, l, I sing, I can feel him spring.  
Now, Johnny, show what your bear can do."

9. "N, n, n, Bess dear, hold your finger here;  
You can feel mine start on another track;  
For he goes straight up, not so near the front,  
And he strikes the ceiling farther back."

10. "We have barked like dogs, let us both play frogs,  
With tongues far back to the ceiling pressed;  
Now our throats must work with a quick, short jerk;  
G, g, g, g, while our lips must rest."

11. "Let us now play tick. Bessie, wind me quick;  
     I've a papa's gold watch; you can hear me go;  
     Stand beside my knee, turn your ear to me,  
     For t, t, t, t is a whisper low.

12. "Now one whisper more, not like that before,  
     For a, a, a, a is the sound you hear;  
     And it means, Take care, little piggies there!  
     Run out of the yard for a dog is near.

13. "This the pigeon's cry and her mate's reply  
     As I heard them talk on the old stone wall;  
     'D,' the first would say, and then, just this way,  
     'D, d, d, d, d,' the next would call.

14. "Watch the pointer, Bess; let me hear you guess  
     The sound that stands for this letter. See!  
     Lips together, too. Push the sound straight through,  
     B, b, b, b, Bess, Baby, look at me."

15. "O! please, brother, show where my tongue must go  
     Where the lish-bone sounds k, q, e, are made."  
     "Tell your tongue to rise farther back," he cries,  
     "When the words 'Kate Cole, come quick!' are said.

16. "P, p, p, Bess, dear, do not come too near:  
     Just watch my lips as I puff about;  
     I'm a steam-boat grand, just about to land,  
     And my mouth is the pipe where the steam comes out.

17. "Gyp, you're just the one. We will have some fun,  
     For, when Gyp's and Jenny's names we say;  
     Then, with sudden burst, come these sounds the first,  
     G, g, g, j, j, with our teeth this way."

18. "Johnny, look at me. I have printed kiss,  
     And, see! I have marked the vowel out;  
     This will leave but k; what this (x) letter is;  
     You say sound x, x as you skip about."

19. "D, mamma please tell if I make this well;  
     Y, y, y, y, y, is so hard for me;  
     Must I press my tongue as 'tis upward flung  
     To the ceiling just as when sounding é?"

20. "No, no, not the same. It is not like e,  
     For here the tongue at the sides you press,  
     And the space on top lets the sound pass out  
     As the whisper does in the letter s."

21. Said mamma, "This <sup>b</sup>pant' is a laughing sound,  
     H, h, h, h, h, Bess may make it, too;  
     Hold the left hand up near the open mouth,  
     That you both may feel where the breath comes through.

22. "Bess my honey-bee, come, at once, to me;  
 Let me taste the sweet on your lips so red;  
 Now, just buzz away and with Johnny say,  
 Z. z, z, z, z, ere you fly to bed.

w.  
 23. "W, w, w, w, w. 'Tis the lullaby  
 Of the wind; but, Bess, you have nought to fear;  
 For your mother's arms are around you thrown;  
 W, w, w, w, w, Johnny, do you hear?

Sh=ch-t-c-s.  
 24. "Sh, sh. Baby sleep until morning comes,  
Sh, ch, t, c, s. You must rest from play;  
 Johnny, take that taper and blow it out,  
Wh, wh, wh, wh, wh. That is just the way."

## OO, O, U.

Air—"EVENING STAR WALTZ."



## Ä, Å, Æ.

Air—"I AM SO GLAD."



# REVIEW SONG FOR VOWEL SOUNDS.

243

Air—"O COME, COME AWAY."



## LETTER SONG.

(To be used as a Review of the Vowel Sounds.)

Air—"O COME, COME AWAY."

Ā	ā	ā	ā	ā						
Ē	ē	ē	ē	ē	ē					
I	=	y	=	ē	=	ū	ō	ō	a	a
Ū	ū	ū	ō	ō						
Ow	=	ou	oy	=	oi	(Be sure to tie.)				
Oo	=	o	=	u	=	ew	(Give reasons why.)			
Ā	ē	i	ō	ū	ŷ					
Oo	oo	o	and	u						

Or      ^or      ^or      ar      ar

With rounded lips now singing:

Then ēr      īr      ūr      as heard in "Lar,"  
And ēre as in "there."

The circumflex is ūr in "curd."

The sound the same in "work" and "word."

In "purr" and "worth" 'tis heard:

Ūr      ūr      ūr      or      or.

Āx      āx      ēx      ēx      eigh

(Equivalents, remember.)

Ēa = i and īe      ī = ū = ūē = īgh

Ō = ūā = ūā = ūā = ūā

Ū = ūē (look closely);      r      sh      ū

Make u long change to ūō you see:

Ew follows r      ch      y;

Ū      ū      ū      ew      ew.

# DIPHTHONG CHILDREN.

Air—"COMING THRO' THE RYE."



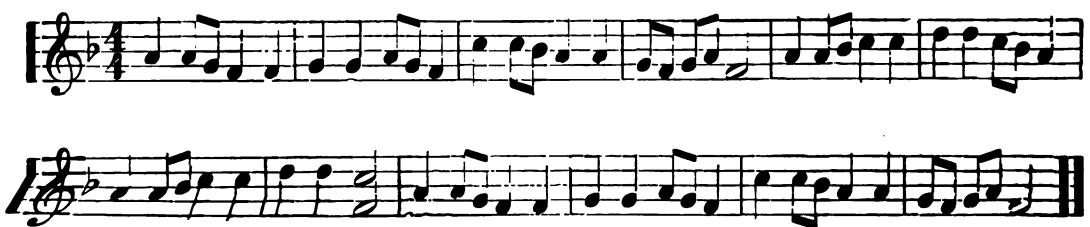
## À (Short Italian).

Air—"JOHN BROWN'S BODY."



## OO, O, U, EW.

Air—"GREENVILLE."



## ROTARY BOARD SONG.

245

Air.—“OUR STATELY SHIP MOVES ON.”



B - ad is bad, h - ad is had, l - ad is lad, m - ad is mad, p - ad is pad, s -



ad is sad, l - ad is lad, etc.

(To be sung as the teacher rotates the Board. Let these drills precede lessons in Speller.)

---

### SHORT FAMILIES.

D - an is Dan	F - an is Fan	b - ack is back	h - ack is hack
m - an is man	t - an is tan	l - ack is lack	t - ack is tack
b - at is bat	c - at is cat	b - and is band	l - and is land
f - at is fat	h - at is hat	h - and is hand	s - and is sand
c - ap is cap	l - ap is lap	b - ang is bang	h - ang is hang
m - ap is map	n - ap is nap	s - ang is sang	r - ang is rang
b - ag is bag	n - ag is nag	b - ank is bank	l - ank is lank
r - ag is rag	t - ag is tag	s - ank is sank	t - ank is tank

---

### LONG FAMILIES.

f - ade is fade	j - ade is jade
m - ade is made	w - ade is wade
c - ame is came	d - ame is dame
l - ame is lame	s - ame is same
b - ake is bake	c - ake is cake
m - ake is make	t - ake is take
f - ace is face	l - ace is lace
r - ace is race	p - ace is pace
c - age is cage	g - age is gage
p - age is page	s - age is sage
d - ate is date	g - ate is gate
l - ate is late	m - ate is mate
b - ale is bale	g - ale is gale
h - ale is hale	m - ale is male
c - ane is cane	l - ane is lane
p - ane is pane	s - ane is sane

Adapt the words of each family to the music, repeating these as often as it is necessary to fill the measure.



**NEW GERMAN PRIMER**

**Deutsche Fibel**  
nach der  
**Phonetisch-synthetischen Methode**  
von  
**Annie Richter Hamilton.**  
Mailing price, 25 cents.

**MCHENRY'S PRACTICAL LESSONS AND EXERCISES IN GRAMMAR**

For Grammar Schools. Mailing price, 50 cts.

A book which makes the study of Grammar intelligible by covering the essential things in a very simple and attractive way; which contains just what grammar pupils need to learn, with many supplemental exercises in Illustrative and Constructive work designed to give them a practical knowledge of correct forms and to lead them into habits of correct usage.

**Lakeside Literature Series**

CLASSICS WHICH WILL CULTIVATE THE EAR AND STIMULATE THE IMAGINATION

**BOOK I.**

**Fables and Rhymes.**

Large Type, Superb Illustrations.  
MAILING PRICE, Cloth, 30c.

**BOOK II.**

**Folk-Story and Verse.**

Fully and Beautifully Illustrated.  
MAILING PRICE, Cloth, 40c.

**BOOK III.**

**Myths of Old Greece.**

Attractively Illustrated.  
MAILING PRICE, Cloth, 50c.

SAMPLE COPIES SENT POSTPAID AT THESE MAILING PRICES.

The Words  
of Abraham  
Lincoln.

*Mailing Price 65c*

Models of  
English for  
Schools.



"Utterances of  
wonderful beauty  
and grandeur."  
An INSPIRATION  
to all who read  
them.

First Book  
for Little  
Folks.

*Mailing Price 25c*

A Practical  
Use of  
Phonics.



Presenting in the  
simplest form all  
the work necessary  
for first year chil-  
dren.  
Illustrated.

Pollard's  
Advanced  
Speller.

*Mailing Price 30c*

A Speller  
that Teaches  
Spelling.



The only Speller  
which clearly de-  
velops the PRIN-  
CIPLES of Sylla-  
bication, Pronun-  
ciation and Accent.

Pollard's  
Intermediate  
Reader.

*Mailing Price 65c*

Superior Portraits,  
Illustrations and Reproductions.



Intended as an introduction to  
the works of some of the great  
authors. Contain many of the  
choicest selections in literature for  
school reading.

Pollard's  
Advanced  
Reader.

*Mailing Price 85c*

**INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF ZOOLOGY**

For Use in High Schools and Academies.

BY N. A. HARVEY,

*Head Department Science, Chicago Normal School; Pres. Dept. Science, National Educational Association, 1901.*

This is an elementary text-book based upon laboratory work.

It gives specific directions for laboratory work, followed with such necessary information about the animals studied as cannot be obtained from a study of the animals themselves.

It combines all the good features of laboratory science and those of the old Natural History study.

It contains work enough for one year of nine months, and is capable of being used in the first year of a high school course.

It can be used to very great advantage by those schools that have the most meager laboratory facilities.

It is illustrated by reproductions from photographs of microscopic objects, thus obviating the absolute necessity of compound microscopes.

It is designed expressly to help those teachers who feel that they are poorly prepared to teach the subject.

It is written from the standpoint of a profound student of educational philosophy, and explains the content of the subject as no other book has ever done.

It grew up in the classroom, and is the result of ten years' experience in teaching zoology in county institutes, in high schools, state university, and normal schools. Every exercise and every method has been tested and successfully used again and again.

*Mailing price, 88 cents.*



# THE NATURAL GEOGRAPHIES

---

## Natural Elementary Geography

Linen Binding, Quarto, 144 pages . . . . . Price, 60 cents

## Natural Advanced Geography

Linen Binding, Large Quarto, 160 pages . . . . . Price, \$1.25  
By JACQUES W. REDWAY, F.R.G.S., and RUSSELL HINMAN, Author of the Eclectic Physical Geography.

The publication of The Natural Geographies marks a new era in the study and teaching of geography. Some of the distinctive features which characterize this new series are:

1. A Natural Plan of Development, based on physical geography and leading in a natural manner to the study of historical, industrial, and commercial geography.
2. Clear and distinct political maps showing correctly the comparative size of different countries, and physical maps showing relief by contour lines and different colors, as in the best government maps.
3. Inductive and comparative treatment of subjects according to the most approved pedagogical principles.
4. Frequent exercises and reviews leading to the correlation and comparison of the parts of the subject already studied.
5. Topical outlines for the language work required by the Courses of Study of the best schools.
6. Supplementary Exercises including laboratory work and references for collateral reading.
7. Numerous original and appropriate pictures and graphic diagrams to illustrate the text.
8. Clear explanations of each necessary term where it first occurs, and omission of formal definitions at the beginning of the book.
9. Strict accordance, in method and treatment, with the recommendations of the Committee of Fifteen.

---

*The Natural Geographies will be sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price by the Publishers:*

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NEW YORK

•

CINCINNATI

•

CHICAGO

## SCHOOL READING BY GRADES

# BALDWIN'S SCHOOL READERS

BY JAMES BALDWIN

Editor of "Harper's Readers," Author of "Old Greek Stories," "Old Stories of the East," etc.

In method and in subject matter, as well as in artistic and mechanical execution, these new readers establish an ideal standard, equally well adapted for city and country schools. They possess many original and meritorious features which are in accord with the most approved methods of instruction, and which will commend them to the best teachers and the best schools. The illustrations are an important feature of the books, and are the work of the best artists. They are not merely pictures inserted for the purpose of ornament, but are intended to assist in making the reading exercises both interesting and instructive.

### BALDWIN'S SCHOOL READERS—EIGHT BOOK EDITION

First Year, 128 pp. . . . .	25 cents	Fifth Year, 208 pp. . . . .	40 cents
Second Year, 160 pp. . . . .	35 cents	Sixth Year, 240 pp. . . . .	45 cents
Third Year, 208 pp. . . . .	40 cents	Seventh Year, 240 pp. . . . .	45 cents
Fourth Year, 208 pp. . . . .	40 cents	Eighth Year, 240 pp. . . . .	45 cents

For the convenience of ungraded schools, and for all who may prefer them in such combined form, an edition corresponding to the ordinary five book series of school readers will be furnished as follows:

### BALDWIN'S SCHOOL READERS—FIVE BOOK EDITION

First Year, 128 pages . . . . .	25 cents
Second Year, 160 pages . . . . .	35 cents
Third Year, 208 pages . . . . .	40 cents
Combined Fourth and Fifth Years. 416 pages . . . . .	60 cents
Combined Sixth and Seventh Years. 480 pages . . . . .	65 cents

*Copies of either edition of Baldwin's School Reading by Grades will be sent, prepaid, on receipt of the price by the Publishers:*

### AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NEW YORK

•

CINCINNATI

•

CHICAGO

# ECLECTIC SCHOOL READINGS

A carefully graded collection of fresh, interesting, and instructive supplementary readings for young children. The books are well and copiously illustrated by the best artists, and are handsomely bound in cloth.

## Folk Story Series

### Lane's Stories for Children

First Reader Grade.	12mo, 104 pages	.	.	.	.	.	25 cents
Baldwin's Fairy Stories and Fables		.	.	.	.	.	35 cents
Second Reader Grade.	12mo, 176 pages	.	.	.	.	.	
Baldwin's Old Greek Stories		.	.	.	.	.	45 cents

Third Reader Grade.	12mo, 208 pages	.	.	.	.	.	
---------------------	-----------------	---	---	---	---	---	--

## Famous Story Series

Baldwin's Fifty Famous Stories Retold		.	.	.	.	.	
Second Reader Grade.	12mo, 172 pages	.	.	.	.	.	35 cents
Baldwin's Old Stories of the East		.	.	.	.	.	
Third Reader Grade.	12mo, 215 pages	.	.	.	.	.	45 cents
Defoe's Robinson Crusoe		.	.	.	.	.	
Fourth Reader Grade.	12mo, 246 pages	.	.	.	.	.	50 cents
Clarke's Arabian Nights		.	.	.	.	.	
Fourth Reader Grade.	12mo, 271 pages	.	,	.	.	.	60 cents

## Historical Story Series

Eggleston's Stories of Great Americans		.	.	.	.	.	
Second Reader Grade.	12mo, 159 pages	.	.	.	.	.	40 cents
Eggleston's Stories of American Life and Adventure		.	.	.	.	.	
Third Reader Grade.	12mo, 214 pages	.	.	.	.	.	50 cents
Guerber's Story of the Greeks		.	.	.	.	.	
Fourth Reader Grade.	12mo, 288 pages	.	.	.	.	.	60 cents
Guerber's Story of the Romans		.	.	.	.	.	
Fourth Reader Grade.	12mo, 288 pages	.	.	.	.	.	60 cents
Guerber's Story of the Chosen People		.	.	.	.	.	
Fourth Reader Grade.	12mo, 240 pages	.	.	.	.	.	60 cents
Guerber's Story of the English		.	.	.	.	.	
Fourth Reader Grade.	12mo, 356 pages	.	.	.	.	.	65 cents
Clarke's Story of Troy		.	.	.	.	.	
Fourth Reader Grade.	12mo, 255 pages	.	.	.	.	.	60 cents
Clarke's Story of Aeneas		.	.	.	.	.	
Fourth Reader Grade.	12mo, 203 pages	.	.	.	.	.	45 cents
Clarke's Story of Caesar		.	.	.	.	.	
Fourth Reader Grade.	12mo, 173 pages	.	.	.	.	.	45 cents

## Natural History Series

Kelly's Short Stories of Our Shy Neighbors		.	.	.	.	.	
Third Reader Grade.	12mo, 214 pages	.	.	.	.	.	50 cents
Dana's Plants and Their Children		.	.	.	.	.	
Fourth Reader Grade.	12mo, 272 pages	.	.	.	.	.	65 cents
Needham's Outdoor Studies		.	.	.	.	.	
Fourth Reader Grade.	12mo, 90 pages	.	.	.	.	.	40 cents

*Copies of any of these books will be sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price  
by the Publishers:*

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NEW YORK

CINCINNATI

CHICAGO

"A TRIP THROUGH ASIA WITH THE CHILDREN"

---

## CARPENTER'S GEOGRAPHICAL READER—ASIA

By FRANK G. CARPENTER. Cloth, 12mo, 304 pages. With colored Maps and numerous Illustrations.

Price, 60 cents

In the interest of its subjects, as well as in its artistic, literary, and mechanical execution, this new Geographical Reader is by far the most attractive and noteworthy book of its kind. It combines in one volume studies in geography to supplement the regular text-books in use, and a book of travels adapted to serve as a reading book in school or in the home.

The studies in geography are not mere compilations from other books, or stories of imaginary travels, but are based on actual travel and personal observation. The author, who is an experienced traveler and writer, has given interesting and vivacious descriptions of his recent extended journeys through the different countries of Asia, together with graphic pictures of their native peoples, just as they are found to-day in their homes and at their work. This has been done in such simple language and charming manner as to make each chapter in the book as entertaining as a story.

The interest and effectiveness of the book are greatly enhanced by the illustrations found on almost every page. These are all new, being mostly reproductions from photographs taken by the author on the ground. The book is also well supplied with maps of Asia and all the countries described.

---

*Copies of Carpenter's Geographical Reader will be sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price by the Publishers:*

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NEW YORK

• CINCINNATI

• CHICAGO

# MILNE'S ARITHMETICS

By WILLIAM J. MILNE, Ph.D., LL.D.

President of the New York State Normal College, Albany, N. Y.

---

## TWO-BOOK SERIES

Elements of Arithmetic . . .	\$0.30
Standard Arithmetic . . .	.65

## THREE-BOOK SERIES

Primary Arithmetic . . .	\$0.25
Intermediate Arithmetic . . .	.30
Standard Arithmetic . . .	.65

**I**T is not enough for pupils to understand arithmetical processes; they must be able to use them accurately and rapidly. It is evident, therefore, that the best text-books in arithmetic are those which give the pupil a thorough and practical knowledge of the study, and, following this, readiness in applying this knowledge to the common affairs of everyday life.

Milne's Arithmetics meet all these conditions and requirements in a natural, logical, and practical manner.

In Either a Two-Book or a Three-Book Series. To meet the varying needs of teachers these arithmetics are now issued in two editions—a two-book series and a three-book series. Other books of a similar nature have been published from time to time, but none have ever attained the extraordinary popularity of Milne's Arithmetics. Their success has been entirely without precedent. The method employed is inductive for the most part, yet it is neither tedious nor redundant. The large number and practical character of the problems included, and the application of business methods of computation in their solution, form noteworthy and valuable features of the books. Other important characteristics are their admirable arrangement, their use of sound pedagogical principles, the absence of all useless matter, their comprehensive character, and their exact statements. No other arithmetics are more modern in every respect.

---

**AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY**

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago



# THE NATURAL COURSE IN MUSIC

BY

FREDERIC H. RIPLEY and THOMAS TAPPER

## Natural Music Readers

Natural Music Primer . . . . .	\$0.30
Natural Music Reader, No. 1 . . . . .	.30
Natural Music Reader, No. 2 . . . . .	.35
Natural Music Reader, No. 3 . . . . .	.35
Natural Music Reader, No. 4 . . . . .	.35
Natural Music Reader, No. 5 . . . . .	.50
Natural Advanced Music Reader . . . . .	1.00

## Natural Music Charts

In seven series, A, B, C, D, E, F, and G, comprising 110 charts, substantially bound and mounted on iron tripod supporter, each series, per set . . . . . 4.00

The Natural Course in Music consists of a carefully prepared series of books and charts, reasonable in price and designed to cover the whole graded course in Primary and Grammar Schools. The plan contemplates the constant use of charts, at first independent of the books, and afterwards as a systematic preparation for the lessons to be learned from day to day in the music readers.

## Natural Music Series—Short Course

BOOK I. For Elementary Grades . . . . .	\$0.35
BOOK II. For Advanced Grades . . . . .	.40

The Short Course in Music is embraced in two books and is designed for use in graded or ungraded schools in which a more complete course is deemed unnecessary or impracticable. In both books familiar and standard songs are made the basis of elementary music instruction. The Short Course embraces over 200 such songs—sacred, patriotic, occasional, and miscellaneous. Throughout, the teaching is constantly applied to the compositions of the best song writers. Exercises in two and three parts in simple form are included in the course. Few definitions are given but a brief summary of the Elements of Music is included in an appendix. The books are illustrated by numerous portraits of authors and composers.

*The books and charts of the Natural Music Course will be sent, prepaid,  
to any address on receipt of the price by the Publishers:*

## AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NEW YORK	•	CINCINNATI	•	CHICAGO		
Boston	•	Atlanta	•	Dallas	•	San Francisco





To avoid fine, this book should be returned on  
or before the date last stamped below

10M-9-39

~~MAR 11 1982~~

APR 21 1983

Tx  
428.42  
P 772  
M

LIBRARY OF  
STANFORD UNIVERSITY

LIBRARY, SCHOOL OF EDUCATION, STANFORD  
588318

